# DIGITAL VIDEO RECORDER

User's Manual

**V1.0.0** 

# **Cybersecurity Recommendations**

#### Mandatory actions to be taken towards cybersecurity

#### 1. Change Passwords and Use Strong Passwords:

The number one reason systems get "hacked" is due to having weak or default passwords. It is recommended to change default passwords immediately and choose a strong password whenever possible. A strong password should be made up of at least 8 characters and a combination of special characters, numbers, and upper and lower case letters.

#### 2. Update Firmware

As is standard procedure in the tech-industry, we recommend keeping NVR, DVR, and IP camera firmware up-to-date to ensure the system is current with the latest security patches and fixes.

### "Nice to have" recommendations to improve your network security

#### 1. Change Passwords Regularly

Regularly change the credentials to your devices to help ensure that only authorized users are able to access the system.

#### 2. Change Default HTTP and TCP Ports:

• Change default HTTP and TCP ports for systems. These are the two ports used to communicate and to view video feeds remotely.

• These ports can be changed to any set of numbers between 1025-65535. Avoiding the default ports reduces the risk of outsiders being able to guess which ports you are using.

### 3. Enable HTTPS/SSL:

Set up an SSL Certificate to enable HTTPS. This will encrypt all communication between your devices and recorder.

### 4. Enable IP Filter:

Enabling your IP filter will prevent everyone, except those with specified IP addresses, from accessing the system.

### 5. Change ONVIF Password:

On older IP Camera firmware, the ONVIF password does not change when you change the system's credentials. You will need to either update the camera's firmware to the latest revision or manually change the ONVIF password.

### 6. Forward Only Ports You Need:

• Only forward the HTTP and TCP ports that you need to use. Do not forward a huge range of numbers to the device. Do not DMZ the device's IP address.

• You do not need to forward any ports for individual cameras if they are all connected to a recorder on site; just the NVR is needed.

#### 7. Disable Auto-Login on SmartPSS:

Those using SmartPSS to view their system and on a computer that is used by multiple people should disable auto-login. This adds a layer of security to prevent users without the appropriate credentials from accessing the system.

### 8. Use a Different Username and Password for SmartPSS:

In the event that your social media, bank, email, etc. account is compromised, you would not want someone collecting those passwords and trying them out on your video surveillance system. Using a different username and password for your security system will make it more difficult for someone to guess their way into your system.

### 9. Limit Features of Guest Accounts:

If your system is set up for multiple users, ensure that each user only has rights to features and functions they need to use to perform their job.

### 10. UPnP:

• UPnP will automatically try to forward ports in your router or modem. Normally this would be a good thing. However, if your system automatically forwards the ports and you leave the credentials defaulted, you may end up with unwanted visitors.

• If you manually forwarded the HTTP and TCP ports in your router/modem, this feature should be turned off regardless. Disabling UPnP is recommended when the function is not used in real applications.

### 11. SNMP:

Disable SNMP if you are not using it. If you are using SNMP, you should do so only temporarily, for tracing and testing purposes only.

### 12. Multicast:

Multicast is used to share video streams between two recorders. Currently there are no known issues involving Multicast, but if you are not using this feature, deactivation can enhance your network security.

### 13. Check the Log:

If you suspect that someone has gained unauthorized access to your system, you can check the system log. The system log will show you which IP addresses were used to login to your system and what was accessed.

### 14. Physically Lock Down the Device:

Ideally, you want to prevent any unauthorized physical access to your system. The best way to achieve this is to install the recorder in a lockbox, locking server rack, or in a room that is behind a lock and key.

## General

This user's manual (hereinafter referred to be "the Manual") introduces the functions and operations of the DVR devices (hereinafter referred to be "the Device").

## **DVR Models**

Smart 1U, E Model, Compact 1U, Mini 1U, 1U

## Safety Instructions

The following categorized signal words with defined meaning might appear in the Manual.

Signal Words	Meaning
	Indicates a high potential hazard which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.
	Indicates a medium or low potential hazard which, if not avoided, could result in slight or moderate injury.
	Indicates a potential risk which, if not avoided, may result in property damage, data loss, lower performance, or unpredictable result.
© TIPS	Provides methods to help you solve a problem or save you time.
	Provides additional information as the emphasis and supplement to the text.

## **Revision History**

No.	Version	Revision Content	Release Time
1	V1.0.0	First Release.	January 31, 2018

## About the Manual

- The Manual is for reference only. If there is inconsistency between the Manual and the actual product, the actual product shall govern.
- All the designs and software are subject to change without prior written notice. The product updates might cause some differences between the actual product and the Manual. Please contact the customer service for the latest program and supplementary documentation.

- There still might be deviation between the actual value of some data and the value provided, if there is any doubt or dispute, please refer to our final explanation.
- Please contact the supplier or customer service if there is any problem occurred when using the device.
- We are not liable for any loss caused by the operations that do not comply with the Manual.
- All trademarks, registered trademarks and the company names in the Manual are the properties of their respective owners.
- Please visit our website or contact your local service engineer for more information.
- If there is any uncertainty or controversy, please refer to our final explanation.

### **Electrical safety**

- All installation and operation here should conform to your local electrical safety codes.
- The product must be grounded to reduce the risk of electric shock.

We assume no liability or responsibility for all the fires or electrical shock caused by improper handling or installation.

#### **Transportation security**

Heavy stress, violent vibration or water splash are not allowed during transportation, storage and installation.

#### Installation

- Keep upwards. Handle with care.
- Do not apply power to the Device before completing installation.
- Do not place objects on the Device.

#### **Qualified engineers needed**

All the examination and repair work should be done by the qualified service engineers. We are not liable for any problems caused by unauthorized modifications or attempted repair.

#### Environment

The Device should be installed in a cool, dry place away from conditions such as direct sunlight, inflammable substances, and explosive substances.

#### Accessories

- Be sure to use all the accessories recommended by manufacturer.
- Before installation, please open the package and check all the components are included.
- Contact your local retailer ASAP if something is broken in your package.

#### Lithium battery

- Improper battery use might result in fire, explosion, or personal injury.
- When replacing the battery, please make sure you are using the same type. Risk of explosion if battery is replaced by an incorrect type.
- Dispose of used batteries according to the instructions.

# Table of Contents

Cybersecurity Recommendations	I
Foreword	111
Important Safeguards and Warnings	V
1 Introduction	1
1.1 Overview	1
1.2 Functions	1
2 Getting Started	3
2.1 Checking the Components	3
2.2 Installing HDD	3
2.2.1 Smart 1U	4
2.2.2 E Model	5
2.2.3 MINI 1U and Compact 1U	6
2.2.4 1U	6
2.3 Installing Device into Rack	7
3 The Grand Tour	8
3.1 Front Panel	8
3.1.1 Smart 1U	8
3.1.2 E Model	9
3.1.3 Compact 1U	9
3.1.4 MINI 1U	. 10
3.1.5 1U	. 10
3.2 Rear Panel	11
3.2.1 Smart 1U	11
3.2.2 E Model	11
3.2.3 Compact 1U	. 12
3.2.4 MINI 1 U	. 13
3.2.5 1U	. 15
3.3 Remote Control Operations	. 16
3.4 Mouse Operations	. 17
4 Connecting Basics	. 19
4.1 Typical Connection Diagram	. 19
4.2 Connecting to Video and Audio Input and Output	. 21
4.2.1 Video Input	. 21
4.2.2 Video Output	. 21
4.2.3 Audio Input	. 22
4.2.4 Audio Output	. 22
4.3 Connecting to Alarm Input and Output	. 22
4.3.1 Introducing Alarm Port	. 23
4.3.2 Alarm Input	. 23
4.3.3 Alarm Output	. 24
4.3.4 Alarm Output Relay Parameters	. 24

4.4 Connecting to RS485 Port	
4.5 Replacing Battery	
5 Local Configurations	
5.1 Initial Settings	
5.1.1 Booting up	
5.1.2 Initializing the Device	
5.1.3 Resetting Password	
5.1.4 Setting Up with the Startup Wizard	
5.2 Live View	51
5.2.1 Live View Screen	
5.2.2 Live View Control bar	
5.2.3 Navigation Bar	
5.2.4 Shortcut Menu	
5.2.5 Color Setting	
5.2.6 Live View Display	61
5.2.7 Configuring Tour Settings	
5.3 Entering Main Menu	
5.4 Controlling PTZ Cameras	
5.4.1 Configuring PTZ Connection Settings	
5.4.2 Working with PTZ Control Panel	
5.4.3 Configuring PTZ Functions	
5.4.4 Calling PTZ Functions	
5.4.5 Calling OSD Menu	
5.5 Configuring Camera Settings	
5.5.1 Configuring Image Settings	
5.5.2 Configuring Encode Settings	
5.5.3 Configuring Snapshot Settings	
5.5.4 Configuring Overlay Settings	
5.5.5 Configuring Covered Area Settings	
5.5.6 Configuring Channel Type	
5.5.7 Upgrading Coaxial Camera	
5.6 Configuring Remote Devices	
5.6.1 Adding Remote Devices	
5.6.2 Managing Remote Devices	
5.7 Configuring Record Settings	
5.7.1 Enabling Record Control	
5.7.2 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule	
5.8 Configuring Snapshot Settings	
5.8.1 Configuring Snapshot Trigger	
5.8.2 Configuring Snapshot Storage Schedule	
5.8.3 Backing up Snapshots to FTP	
5.9 Playing Back Video	
5.9.1 Enabling Record Control	
5.9.2 Instant Playback	
5.9.3 Main Interface of Video Playback 5.9.4 Smart Search	
5.9.5 Marking and Playing Back Video	
שמשל אומו אוויץ מויט דומאוויץ שמטג אועפט	

5.9.6 Playing Back Snapshots	121
5.9.7 Playing Back Splices	121
5.9.8 Using the File List	122
5.10 Alarm Events Settings	124
5.10.1 Video Detection	124
5.10.2 IVS Function	133
5.10.3 Face Detection	
5.10.4 System Events	149
5.10.5 Alarm Input Settings	155
5.10.6 Alarm Output Settings	
5.11 IoT Function	163
5.11.1 Configuring Sensor Settings	163
5.11.2 Configuring Temperature and Humidity Camera	
5.11.3 Configuring Wireless Siren	
5.12 Configuring POS Settings	
5.12.1 Searching the Transaction Records	
5.12.2 Configuring POS Settings	
5.13 Configuring Backup Settings	
5.13.1 Finding USB Device	185
5.13.2 Backing up Files	
5.14 Network Management	
5.14.1 Configuring Network Settings	187
5.14.2 Configuring Network Testing Settings	
5.15 Configuring Account Settings	
5.15.1 Configuring User Account	
5.15.2 Configuring Group Account	
5.15.3 Configuring Onvif Users	
5.16 Audio Management	
5.16.1 Configuring Audio Files	
5.16.2 Configuring Playing Schedule for Audio Files	
5.17 Storage Management	221
5.17.1 Configuring Basic Settings	221
5.17.2 Configuring the Recording and Snapshot Schedule	222
5.17.3 Configuring HDD Manager	222
5.17.4 Configuring HDD Group	223
5.17.5 Configuring HDD Detecting Settings	225
5.17.6 Configuring Quota Settings	229
5.17.7 Configuring Record Estimate	
5.17.8 Configuring FTP Storage Settings	233
5.18 Configuring System Settings	235
5.18.1 Configuring General System Settings	235
5.18.2 Configuring RS232 Port Settings	236
5.18.3 Configuring Security Settings	238
5.18.4 Configuring System Maintenance Settings	239
5.18.5 Exporting and Importing System Settings	
5.18.6 Restoring Default Settings	
5.18.7 Upgrading the Device	

5.19 Viewing Information	
5.19.1 Viewing Version Details	
5.19.2 Viewing Log Information	
5.19.3 Viewing Event Information	
5.19.4 Viewing Network Information	250
5.19.5 Viewing HDD Information	252
5.19.6 Viewing Device Status	253
5.19.7 Viewing Channel Information	
5.19.8 Viewing Data Stream Information	255
5.20 Logout the Device	256
6 Web Operations	257
6.1 Connecting to Network	257
6.2 Logging in the Web	257
6.3 Resetting Password	
6.4 Introducing Web Main Menu	
7 FAQ	263
Appendix 1 Glossary	
Appendix 1 Olossal y	
Appendix 2 HDD Capacity Calculation	
Appendix 2 HDD Capacity Calculation Appendix 3 Compatible Backup Devices	271 273
Appendix 2 HDD Capacity Calculation Appendix 3 Compatible Backup Devices Appendix 3.1 Compatible USB list	
Appendix 2 HDD Capacity Calculation Appendix 3 Compatible Backup Devices	
Appendix 2 HDD Capacity Calculation Appendix 3 Compatible Backup Devices Appendix 3.1 Compatible USB list	
Appendix 2 HDD Capacity Calculation Appendix 3 Compatible Backup Devices Appendix 3.1 Compatible USB list Appendix 3.2 Compatible SD Card list	
Appendix 2 HDD Capacity Calculation Appendix 3 Compatible Backup Devices Appendix 3.1 Compatible USB list Appendix 3.2 Compatible SD Card list Appendix 3.3 Compatible Portable HDD list	
Appendix 2 HDD Capacity Calculation Appendix 3 Compatible Backup Devices Appendix 3.1 Compatible USB list Appendix 3.2 Compatible SD Card list Appendix 3.3 Compatible Portable HDD list Appendix 3.4 Compatible USB DVD List	
Appendix 2 HDD Capacity Calculation Appendix 3 Compatible Backup Devices Appendix 3.1 Compatible USB list Appendix 3.2 Compatible SD Card list Appendix 3.3 Compatible Portable HDD list Appendix 3.4 Compatible USB DVD List Appendix 3.5 Compatible SATA DVD List	
Appendix 2 HDD Capacity Calculation Appendix 3 Compatible Backup Devices Appendix 3.1 Compatible USB list Appendix 3.2 Compatible SD Card list Appendix 3.3 Compatible Portable HDD list Appendix 3.4 Compatible USB DVD List Appendix 3.5 Compatible SATA DVD List Appendix 3.6 Compatible SATA HDD List	<b>271</b> <b>273</b> 273 273 274 274 274 274 274 274 275 <b>280</b>
Appendix 2 HDD Capacity Calculation Appendix 3 Compatible Backup Devices Appendix 3.1 Compatible USB list Appendix 3.2 Compatible SD Card list Appendix 3.3 Compatible Portable HDD list Appendix 3.4 Compatible USB DVD List Appendix 3.5 Compatible SATA DVD List Appendix 3.6 Compatible SATA HDD List Appendix 4 Compatible CD/DVD Burner List	
Appendix 2 HDD Capacity Calculation Appendix 3 Compatible Backup Devices Appendix 3.1 Compatible USB list Appendix 3.2 Compatible SD Card list Appendix 3.3 Compatible Portable HDD list Appendix 3.4 Compatible USB DVD List Appendix 3.5 Compatible SATA DVD List Appendix 3.6 Compatible SATA HDD List Appendix 4 Compatible CD/DVD Burner List Appendix 5 Compatible Displayer List Appendix 6 Compatible Switcher	
Appendix 2 HDD Capacity Calculation Appendix 3 Compatible Backup Devices Appendix 3.1 Compatible USB list Appendix 3.2 Compatible SD Card list Appendix 3.3 Compatible Portable HDD list Appendix 3.4 Compatible USB DVD List Appendix 3.5 Compatible SATA DVD List Appendix 3.6 Compatible SATA HDD List Appendix 4 Compatible CD/DVD Burner List Appendix 5 Compatible Displayer List Appendix 6 Compatible Switcher	
Appendix 2 HDD Capacity Calculation Appendix 3 Compatible Backup Devices Appendix 3.1 Compatible USB list. Appendix 3.2 Compatible SD Card list Appendix 3.3 Compatible Portable HDD list. Appendix 3.4 Compatible USB DVD List. Appendix 3.5 Compatible SATA DVD List. Appendix 3.6 Compatible SATA HDD List Appendix 4 Compatible CD/DVD Burner List. Appendix 5 Compatible Displayer List Appendix 6 Compatible Switcher Appendix 7 Earthing	271 273 273 274 274 274 274 274 274 275 280 281 281 282 283 283
Appendix 2 HDD Capacity Calculation Appendix 3 Compatible Backup Devices Appendix 3.1 Compatible USB list. Appendix 3.2 Compatible SD Card list Appendix 3.3 Compatible Portable HDD list. Appendix 3.4 Compatible USB DVD List. Appendix 3.5 Compatible SATA DVD List. Appendix 3.6 Compatible SATA HDD List Appendix 4 Compatible CD/DVD Burner List Appendix 5 Compatible Displayer List Appendix 6 Compatible Switcher Appendix 7 Earthing Appendix 7.1 What Is the Surge.	
Appendix 2 HDD Capacity Calculation Appendix 3 Compatible Backup Devices Appendix 3.1 Compatible USB list Appendix 3.2 Compatible SD Card list Appendix 3.3 Compatible Portable HDD list Appendix 3.4 Compatible USB DVD List Appendix 3.5 Compatible SATA DVD List Appendix 3.6 Compatible SATA HDD List Appendix 3.6 Compatible CD/DVD Burner List Appendix 5 Compatible Displayer List Appendix 6 Compatible Switcher Appendix 7.1 What Is the Surge Appendix 7.2 The Earthing Modes	

## 1.1 Overview

The Device is an excellent digital monitor product for security industry. The embedded LINUX OS assures the stable operation. The H.264 and G.711 technologies assure the high quality image and low bit stream. The frame-by-frame play function displays more details for analysis, and provides the functions such as record, playback, and monitor and assures the synchronization for audio and video. The Device also adopts the advanced control technology and great network data transmission capability.

The Device adopts embedded design to achieve high security and reliability. It can work in the local end and, with strong networking capability it can get connected to the professional surveillance software (Smart PSS) to form a security network to show its powerful remote monitoring function.

The Device is applicable to the areas such as bank, telecom, electricity, traffic, intelligent residential district, factory, warehouse, resources, and water conservancy facilities.

## 1.2 Functions

### 

The functions might be different depending on the software and hardware version of the model you purchased.

### **Real-time Surveillance**

- Support VGA port and HDMI port to realize the surveillance through monitors.
- Support HDMI, VGA, and TV output at the same time.

#### **IoT Management**

Provide specific management module for IoT features including humidity and temperature data reports and alarms linkage.

#### **Sensor Integration**

Integrate coaxial cameras with diverse array of sensors such as temperature, humidity and wireless alarm devices.

#### **Storage Management**

- Special data format to guarantee data security and avoid the risk of modifying data viciously.
- Support digital watermark.

#### **Compression Format**

Support multiple-channel audio and video signal. An independent hardware decodes the audio and video signal from each channel to maintain video and audio synchronization.

### **Backup Function**

- Support backup operation through USB port (such as USB storage disk, portable HDD, and burner).
- Client-end user can download the file from local HDD through network to backup.

### **Record & Playback**

- Support each channel real-time record independently, and simultaneously support the functions such as search, backward play, network monitor, record search, and download.
- Support various playback modes: slow play, fast play, backward play and frame by frame play.
- Support time title overlay so that you can view event accurate occurred time.
- Support zooming in the selected area in the live view.

### **Network Operation**

Support network remote real-time monitor, remote record search and remote PTZ control.

### **Alarm Activation**

- Several relay alarm outputs to realize alarm activation and on-site light control.
- The alarm input port and output port have the protection circuit to guarantee the Device safety.

### **Communication Port**

- RS485 port can realize alarm input and PTZ control.
- RS232 port can connect to keyboard, COM port of PC or the matrix control.
- Standard Ethernet port can realize network remote access function.
- The dual-network port has the multiple-address, fault tolerance, load balance setup mode.

### PTZ Control

Support PTZ decoder through RS485 port.

### **Intelligent Operation**

- Support mouse operation function.
- Support "copy and paste" function for the same settings.

### UPnP (Universal Plug and Play)

Establish mapping connection between LAN and WAN through UPnP protocol.

### **Camera Self-adaptive**

Auto-recognize and work with the PAL or NTSC camera and HD camera.

Getting Started

## 2.1 Checking the Components

When you receive the Device, please check against the following checking list. If any of the items are missing or damaged, contact the local retailer or after-sales engineer immediately.

Sequence	Checking items		Requirement
		Appearance	No obvious damage.
1	Package	Packing materials	No broken or distorted positions that could be caused by hit.
2	Labels	Labels on the device	Not torn up. NOTE Do not tear up or throw away the labels; otherwise the warranty services are not ensured. You need to provide the serial number of the product when you call the after-sales service.
		Appearance	No obvious damage.
3	Device	Data cables, power cables, fan cables, mainboard	No connection loose.

## 2.2 Installing HDD

Please check if the HDD is already installed in the Device when you first time using the Device. It is suggested to use the HDD recommended officially. Do not use the PC HDD.

# 

Shut down the device and then unplug the power cable before you open the case to replace the HDD.

## 2.2.1 Smart 1U



1. Remove the screws to take 2. Fix the screws on the HDD off the cover.



but do not fasten them.



4. Turn the DVR upside down to see the screws and then fasten them.



5. Use the HDD cable and power cable to connect HDD and mainboard.



3. Match the screws with the holes on the DVR to place the HDD.



6. Put back the cover and fasten the screws.

## 2.2.2 E Model

## 2.2.2.1 Installing Battery

## 

The battery is only provided with some models.



1. Put the battery cable through the hole.



2. Connect to the cable into the port.

## 2.2.2.2 Installing HDD

## 

Skip step 6 if the battery is not equipped with the model you purchased.



1. Remove the screws to take off the cover.



4. Match the holes on the bracket with the screw holes on HDD.



2. Remove the screws to take off the bracket.



5. Use screws to fix the HDD onto the bracket.



3. Put the HDD onto the bracket.



 (Optional) Put the battery cable through the hole to connect into the cable port.



 Use the HDD cable and power cable to connect HDD and mainboard.



 Install the bracket back and then fasten the screws.



9. Put back the cover and fasten the screws.

## 2.2.3 MINI 1U and Compact 1U



1. Remove the screws on the rear panel.



 Turn the device to see the back side of it. Aim the screws of the HDD at the holes on the back of the device and fix the screws.



2. Fix the screws on the HDD but do not be fastened.



 Use the HDD cable and power cable to connect HDD and mainboard.



3. Place the HDD onto the Device.



Put back the cover and fix the screws.

## 2.2.4 1U



1. Remove the screws on the cover.



 Fix the screws onto the HDD, but do not be fastened.



 Put the HDD into the Device.



 Turn the device to see the back side of it. Aim the screws of the HDD at the holes on the back of the device, and then fix the screws.



 Use the HDD cable and power cable to connect HDD and mainboard.



6. Put back the cover and fix the screws.

## 2.3 Installing Device into Rack

## 

Only 1.5U and 2U Devices support this installation.

To install the DVR into Rack, do the following:

- <u>Step 1</u> Check if the in-house temperature is lower than 35<sup>°</sup>C (95<sup>°</sup>F) and make sure the 15cm (6in.) spacing around the Device for ventilation.
- <u>Step 1</u> Use six screws to fix the DVR on each side.
- <u>Step 2</u> Install from the bottom up.



If you want to install more accessories to the rack, take preventive measures to avoid power socket overload.

<u>Step 3</u> Install more accessories to the rack if needed.



This chapter introduces various components of the Device, remote control and mouse operations, and typical connection.

## 3.1 Front Panel

## 3.1.1 Smart 1U



Figure 3-1

lcon	Name	Function
		• The indicator is off when the HDD is running normally.
U U	HDD status indicator	• The indicator glows blue when the HDD is in
		malfunction.
		• The indicator is off when the power is connected
<i>(</i> 1)	Power status	abnormally.
U	indicator	• The indicator glows blue when the power is connected
		normally.
		• The indicator is off when the network connection is
品	Network status	correct.
66	indicator	• The indicator glows blue when the network connection
		is abnormal.

Table 3-1

## 3.1.2 E Model



Figure	3-2

No.	Button/Icon	Function	
1	POWER	Turns on/off the DVR. The indicator glows blue when the DVR is turned on.	
2	HDD status indicator	The indicator glows blue when the HDD is in malfunction.	
3	Network status indicator	The indicator glows blue when the network connection is abnormal.	
4,5,6	Battery status indicator	<ul> <li>When the battery remains full or no less than sixty percent, the No.4 indicator is on, and the No.5 and No.6 are out.</li> <li>When the battery remains between thirty percent and sixty percent, the No.5 indicator is on and the others are out.</li> <li>When the battery remains between one percent and thirty percent, the No.6 indicator is on and the others are out.</li> <li>When the battery is exhausted, the DVR is turned off, or there is no battery attached to the DVR, all the three indicators are out.</li> </ul>	
7	USB port	Connects to external devices such as USB storage device, keyboard and mouse.	

Table 3-2

## 3.1.3 Compact 1U



Figure 3-3

No.	Port Name	Function
1	HDD	Glows blue when HDD status is abnormal.
2	NET	Glows blue when network status is abnormal.

No.	Port Name	Function	
3	POWER	Glows blue when the power is connected properly.	
4	USB port	Connects to peripheral devices such as USB storage device, keyboard and mouse.	

## 3.1.4 MINI 1U



Figure 3-4

No.	Port Name	Function
1	HDD	Glows blue when HDD status is abnormal.
2	NET	Glows blue when network status is abnormal.
3	POWER	Glows blue when the power is connected properly.
4	USB port	Connects to peripheral devices such as USB storage device, keyboard and mouse.

## 3.1.5 1U



Figure 3-5

No.	Port Name	Function
1	Status indicator light	Glows blue when the device is working properly.
2	HDD	Glows blue when HDD status is abnormal.
3	NET	Glows blue when network status is abnormal.
4	POWER	Glows blue when the power is connected properly.
5	USB port	Connects to the external devices such as keyboard, mouse, and USB storage device.

## 3.2 Rear Panel

## 3.2.1 Smart 1U



Figure 3-6

No.	Port Name	Function
1	Video input port	Connects to analog camera to input video signal.
2	USB port	Connects to external devices such as USB storage device, keyboard and mouse.
3	VGA port	Outputs analog video data to the connected display with VGA port.
4	HDMI port	High definition audio and video signal output port. The port outputs the uncompressed high definition video and multi-channel audio data to the connected display with HDMI port.
5	Network port	Connects to Ethernet port.
6	Power input port	Inputs DC 12V power.
7	<b>=</b>	Ground terminal.

Table 3-5

## 3.2.2 E Model





Figure 3-8

No.	Port Name	Function
1	Video input port	Connects to analog camera to input video signal.
2	Audio input port	Receives audio signal output from the devices such as microphone.
3	Audio output port	Outputs audio signal to the devices such as the sound box.
4	RS485 communication port	Connects to the control devices such as speed dome PTZ. RS485_A port is connected by the cable A and RS485_B is connected to the cable B.
5	HDMI port	High definition audio and video signal output port. The port outputs the uncompressed high definition video and multi-channel audio data to the connected display with HDMI port.
6	VGA port	Outputs analog video data to the connected display with VGA port.
7, 8	USB port	Connects to external devices such as USB storage device, keyboard and mouse.
9	Network port	Connects to Ethernet port.
10	Power input port	Inputs DC 12V power.
11	Power output port	Outputs DC 12V power.
12	Ground	Ground terminal.

Table 3-6

## 3.2.3 Compact 1U



Figure 3-9

No.	Port Name	Function
1	Video input port	Connects to analog camera to input video signal.
2	Audio input port	Receives audio signal output from the devices such as microphone.
3	Audio output port	Outputs audio signal to the devices such as the sound box.
4	HDMI port	High definition audio and video signal output port. The port outputs the uncompressed high definition video and multi-channel audio data to the connected display with HDMI port.
5	Network port	Connects to Ethernet port.
6	RS485 communication port	Connects to the control devices such as speed dome PTZ. RS485_A port is connected by the cable A and RS485_B is connected to the cable B.
7	USB port	Connects to external devices such as USB storage device, keyboard and mouse.
8	VGA port	Outputs analog video data to the connected display with VGA port.
9	Power input port	Inputs DC 12V power.
10	Power button	Turns on/off the DVR.
11	ŧ	Ground terminal.
12	Power cable fastener	Use clamp to secure the power cable on the DVR in case there is any loss.
		Table 3-7

Table 3-7

## 3.2.4 MINI 1 U



No.	Port Name	Function

No.	Port Name	Function
1	Alarm input port 1–16	4 groups of alarm input ports (Group 1: port 1 to port 4; Group 2: port 5 to port 8; Group 3: port 9 to port 12; Group 4: port 13 to port 16). These ports receive the signal from the external alarm source. There are two types: NO (normal open) and NC (normal close). NOTE When your alarm input device is using external power, please make sure the alarm input device and the Device have the same ground.
	Alarm output port 1–3 (NO1–NO3; C1–C3)	<ul> <li>3 groups of alarm output ports (Group 1: port NO1–C1, Group 2: port NO2–C2, Group 3: port NO3–C3). These ports output alarm signal to the alarm device. Please make sure power supply to the external alarm device.</li> <li>NO: Normal open alarm output port.</li> <li>C: Alarm output public end.</li> </ul>
	<del>上</del>	Ground.
2	Video input port	Connects to analog camera to input video signal.
3	Audio input port	Receives audio signal output from the devices such as microphone. It corresponds to video input port 1.
4	DB25 port	Connects to the audio splitter taken from the package to convert to audio input port which receives the audio signal from devices such as microphone. It corresponds to video input ports 2–16.
5	Audio output port	Outputs audio signal to the devices such as the sound box.
6	HDMI port	High definition audio and video signal output port. The port outputs the uncompressed high definition video and multi-channel audio data to the connected display with HDMI port.
7	USB port	Connects to external devices such as USB storage device, keyboard and mouse.
8	Network port	Connects to Ethernet port.
9	RS485 communication port	Connects to the control devices such as speed dome PTZ. RS485_A port is connected by the cable A and RS485_B is connected to the cable B.
10	Power input port	Inputs DC 12V power.
11	VGA port	Outputs analog video data to the connected display with VGA port.
12	Power button	Turns on/off the DVR.
13	Power cable fastener	Use a cable tie to secure the power cable on the DVR to prevent loss.
14	Ð	Ground terminal.



Figure 3-11

No.	Port Name	Function
1	<b>(</b>	Ground terminal.
2	Alarm input port 1–16	<ul> <li>4 groups of alarm input ports (Group 1: port 1 to port 4; Group 2: port 5 to port 8; Group 3: port 9 to port 12; Group 4: port 13 to port 16). These ports receive the signal from the external alarm source. There are two types: NO (normal open) and NC (normal close).</li> <li>NOTE</li> <li>When your alarm input device is using external power, please make sure the alarm input device and the DVR connect to the same ground.</li> </ul>
	Alarm output port 1–3 (NO1–NO3; C1–C3)	<ul> <li>3 groups of alarm output ports. (Group 1: port NO1– C1,Group 2:port NO2–C2,Group 3:port NO3–C3)). These ports output alarm signal to the alarm device. Please make sure power supply to the external alarm device.</li> <li>NO: Normal open alarm output port.</li> <li>C: Alarm output public end.</li> </ul>
	<del>上</del>	Ground.
3	Video input port	Connects to analog camera to input video signal.
4	Audio input port	Receives audio signal output from the devices such as microphone.
5	Audio output port	Outputs audio signal to the devices such as the sound box.
6	HDMI port	High definition audio and video signal output port. The port outputs the uncompressed high definition video and multi-channel audio data to the connected display with HDMI port.
7	USB port	Connects to the external devices such as keyboard, mouse, and USB storage device.
8	Network port	Connects to Ethernet port.
9	RS485 communication port	Connects to the control devices such as speed dome PTZ. RS485_A port is connected by the cable A and RS485_B is connected to the cable B.
10	Power input port	Inputs DC 12V power.

No.	Port Name	Function
11	VGA port	Outputs analog video data to the connected display with VGA port.
12	Power button	Turns on/off the DVR.
10	Power cable	Use clamp to secure the power cable on the DVR in case there is
13	fastener	any loss.
Table 0.0		

## 3.3 Remote Control Operations

## 

Please note the remote control is not our standard accessory and might not be included in the accessary bag. It is supplied dependent on the model you purchased.



Figure 3-12

No.	Name	Function
1	Power button	Press this button to boot up or shut down the device.
2	Address	Press this button to input device serial number, so that you can
2	Address	control the Device.
3	Forward	Multi-step forward speed and normal speed playback.
4	Slow motion	Multi-step slow motion speed or normal playback.
5	Next record	In playback state, press this button to play back the next video.
6	Previous record	In playback state, press this button to play back the previous
0		video.

No.	Name	Function
7	Play/Pause	<ul> <li>In normal playback state, press this button to pause playback.</li> <li>In pause state, press this button to resume to normal playback.</li> <li>In live view window interface, press this button to enter video search menu.</li> </ul>
8	Reverse/pause	In the reverse playback state, press this button to pause reverse playback. In the reverse playback pause state, press this button to resume to playback reversing state.
9	Esc.	Go back to previous menu or cancel current operation (close front interface or control).
10	Record	<ul> <li>Start or stop record manually.</li> <li>In record interface, use the direction buttons to select the channel that you want to record.</li> <li>Press this button for at least 1.5 seconds, and the manual record interface will be displayed.</li> </ul>
11	Direction keys	Switch between current activated controls by going left or right. In playback state, the keys control the playback progress bar. Aux function (such as operating the PTZ menu).
12	Enter/menu key	<ul> <li>Confirms an operation.</li> <li>Go to the OK button.</li> <li>Go to the menu.</li> </ul>
13	Multiple-window switch	Switch between multiple-window and one-window.
14	Fn	<ul> <li>In single-channel monitoring mode, press this button to display the PTZ control and color setting functions.</li> <li>Switch the PTZ control menu in PTZ control interface.</li> <li>In motion detection interface, press this button with direction keys to complete setup.</li> <li>In text mode, press and hold this button to delete the last character. To use the clearing function: Long press this button for 1.5 seconds.</li> <li>In HDD menu, switch HDD recording time and other information (as indicated in the pop-up message.</li> </ul>
15	Alphanumeric keys	<ul> <li>Input password, numbers.</li> <li>Switch channel.</li> <li>Press Shift to switch the input method.</li> </ul>

# 3.4 Mouse Operations

The operations are based on the considerations for right-handed users.

assword input dialogue box pops up if you have not logged in yet. live view window interface, you can go to the main menu.
hen you have selected one menu item, click it to view menu content.
plement the control operation.
odify checkbox or motion detection status.
ick combo box to pop up drop-down list.
text box, click the corresponding button on the panel to enter a numeral English character (small/capitalized).
In English input mode: Click 🔜 to enter a backspace and click 📟
to delete the previous character.
!?@#\$%=+*       123         qwertyuiop/       456         asdfghjkl:Enter       789         zxcvbnm,.Shift       0&
In numeral input mode: Click 🔲 to clear and click 📟 to delete the
previous character.
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 └─ ←
plement special control operations such as double-click one item in the e list to play back the video.
multiple-window mode, double-click one channel to view in full-window. Duble-click current video again to go back to previous multiple-window ode.
ght-click in live view window interface, the shortcut menu is displayed. For
fferent series product, the shortcut menu may vary.
kit current menu without saving the modification. numeral input box: Increase or decrease numeral value.
witch the items in the check box.
age up or page down.
elect current control and move it.
elect motion detection zone.
elect privacy mask zone.



This chapter introduces various components of the Device, remote control and mouse operations, and typical connection.

## 4.1 Typical Connection Diagram







Figure 4-3

## 4.2 Connecting to Video and Audio Input and Output

## 4.2.1 Video Input

The video input interface is BNC. The input video format includes: PAL/NTSC BNC ( $1.0V_{P-P}$ ,  $75\Omega$ .).

The video signal should comply with your national standards.

The input video signal shall have high SNR, low distortion; low interference, natural color and suitable lightness.

#### Guarantee the stability and reliability of the camera signal

The camera shall be installed in a cool, dry place away from direct sunlight, inflammable, explosive substances and etc.

The camera and the DVR should have the same grounding to ensure the normal operation of the camera.

#### Guarantee stability and reliability of the transmission line

Please use high quality, sound shielded BNC. Please select suitable BNC model according to the transmission distance.

If the distance is too long, you should use twisted pair cable, and you can add video compensation devices or use optical fiber to ensure video quality.

You should keep the video signal away from the strong electromagnetic interference, especially the high tension current.

#### Keep connection lugs in well contact

The signal line and shielded wire should be fixed firmly and in well connection. Avoid dry joint, lap welding and oxidation.

## 4.2.2 Video Output

Video output includes a BNC (PAL/NTSC1.0V<sub>P-P</sub>, 75 $\Omega$ ) output, a VGA output and HDMI output. System supports BNC, VGA and HDMI output at the same time.

When you are using pc-type monitor to replace the monitor, please pay attention to the following points:

- To defer aging, do not allow the pc monitor to run for a long time.
- Regular demagnetization will keep device maintain proper status.
- Keep it away from strong electromagnetic interference devices.

Using TV as video output device is not a reliable substitution method. You also need to reduce the working hour and control the interference from power supply and other devices. The low quality TV may result in device damage.

## 4.2.3 Audio Input

These series products audio input port adopt BNC port.

Due to high impedance of audio input, please use active sound pick-up.

Audio transmission is similar to video transmission. Try to avoid interference, dry joint, loose contact and it shall be away from high tension current.

## 4.2.4 Audio Output

The audio output signal parameter is usually over 200mv 1K $\Omega$  (BNC or RCA). It can directly connect to low impedance earphone, active sound box or amplifier-drive audio output device.

If the sound box and the pick-up cannot be separated spatially, it is easy to arouse squeaking. In this case you can adopt the following measures:

- Use better sound pick-up with better directing property.
- Reduce the volume of the sound box.
- Using more sound-absorbing materials in decoration can reduce voice echo and improve acoustics environment.
- Adjust the layout to reduce happening of the squeaking.

## 4.3 Connecting to Alarm Input and Output

Please read the followings before connecting.

### Alarm input

- Please make sure alarm input mode is grounding alarm input.
- Grounding signal is needed for alarm input.
- Alarm input needs the low level voltage signal.
- Alarm input mode can be either NC (normal Open) or NO (Normal Close)
- When you are connecting two DVRs or you are connecting one DVR and one other device, please use a relay to separate them.

### Alarm output

The alarm output port should not be connected to high power load directly (It shall be less than 1A) to avoid high current which may result in relay damage. Please use the contactor to realize the connection between the alarm output port and the load.

### How to connect PTZ decoder

- Ensure the decoder has the same grounding with DVR, otherwise you may not control the PTZ. Shielded twisted wire is recommended and the shielded layer is used to connect to the grounding.
- Avoid high voltage. Ensure proper wiring and some thunder protection measures.
- For too long signal wires, 120Ω should be parallel connected between A, B lines on the far end to reduce reflection and guarantee the signal quality.
- "485 A, B" of DVR cannot parallel connect with "485 port" of other device.
- The voltage between of A, B lines of the decoder should be less than 5V.

Improper grounding may result in chip damage.

## 4.3.1 Introducing Alarm Port

## NOTE

The alarm input ports are dependent on the model you purchased.



2 3 4 ± 5 6 7 8 ± A B ± 9 10 11 12 ± 13 14 15 16 ± ±

Figure 4-4

Icon	Description		
1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6,7, 8, 9, 10, 11,12, 13, 14, 15, 16	ALARM 1 to ALARM 16. The alarm becomes active in low voltage.		
NO1 C1, NO2 C2, NO3 C3, NO4 C4	There are four groups of normal open activation output (on/off button).		
NO5 C5 NC5,	There is one group of normal open activation output (on/off button).		
CTRL 12V	<ul> <li>Control power output of the 6<sup>th</sup> alarm output channel. Voltage current: 500mA.</li> <li>When there is an alarm output, close the power output.</li> <li>When the alarm is cancelled, open the power output.</li> </ul>		
+12V	Rated current. Voltage current: 500mA.		
Ŧ	Ground cable.		
485 A/B	485 communication port. They are used to control devices such decoder. 120Ω should be parallel connected between A, B lines if th are too many PTZ decoders.		
Four-wire full-duplex RS485 port.T+,T-,R+,R-T+ T-: output wire.R+ R-: input wire.			

Table 4-1

## 4.3.2 Alarm Input

Please refer to the following figure for more information.

- Grounding alarm inputs which includes Normal open and Normal close type.
- Please parallel connect COM end and GND end of the alarm detector (Provide external power to the alarm detector).

- Please parallel connect the Ground of the DVR and the ground of the alarm detector.
- Please connect the NC port of the alarm sensor to the DVR alarm input(ALARM)
- Use the same ground with that of DVR if you use external power to the alarm device.





## 4.3.3 Alarm Output

- Provide external power to external alarm device.
- To avoid overloading, please read the following relay parameters table carefully.
- RS485 A/B cable is for the A/B cable of the PTZ decoder.

## 4.3.4 Alarm Output Relay Parameters

## 

Refer to the actual product for relay model information.

Model		HFD23/005-1ZS	HRB1-S-DC5V
Material of the touch		AgNi+ gold-plating	AuAg10/AgNi10/CuNi30
Rating (Resistance Load)	Rated switch capacity	30V DC 1A/125V AC 0.5A	24V DC 1A/125V AC 2A
	Maximum switch power	62.5VA/30W	250VA/48W
	Maximum switch voltage	125V AC/60V DC	125V AC/60V DC
	Maximum switch currency	2A	2A
Insulation	Between touches	400VAC 1 minute	500VAC 1 minute
	Between touch and winding	1000VAC 1 minute	1000VAC 1 minute
Turn-on Time		5ms max	5ms max
Turn-off Time		5ms max	5ms max
Longevity	Mechanical	1×10 <sup>7</sup> times (300 times/MIN)	5×10 <sup>6</sup> times (300 times/MIN)
	Electrical	1×10 <sup>5</sup> times (30 times/MIN)	2.5×10 <sup>4</sup> times (30 times/MIN)
Working Temperature		-30℃-+70℃	-40°C–+70°C

## 4.4 Connecting to RS485 Port

- Step 1 Connect the RS485 cable of the PTZ camera to the RS485 port on the Device. Ensure the match of A and B interfaces.
- <u>Step 2</u> Connect the video out cable of the PTZ camera to the video input port on the Device.
- <u>Step 3</u> Turn on the PTZ camera.

## 4.5 Replacing Battery

Please make sure to use the same battery model if possible.

We recommend replace battery regularly (such as one-year) to guarantee system time accuracy.



Before replacement, please save the system setup, otherwise, you may lose the data completely!



Please read the following notes prior to using your Device.

III NOTE

- The interfaces in the Manual are used for introducing the operations and only for reference. The actual interface might be different dependent on the model you purchased. If there is inconsistency between the Manual and the actual product, the actual product shall govern.
- The Manual is a general document for introducing the product, so there might be some functions described for the Device in the Manual not apply to the model you purchased.
- Conventions for mouse operations on a menu.
  - $\diamond$  Click: On the menu, left-click the mouse once on an option to enter the option setting.
  - Right-click: On any interface, right-click the mouse once to return to the previous level.
     For details about mouse operations, see "3.4 Mouse Operations."

## 5.1 Initial Settings

## 5.1.1 Booting up



- Ensure the input voltage corresponds to the power requirement of the Device. Power on the Device after the power cable is properly connected.
- To protect the Device, please connect the Device with the power cable first, and then connect to the power source.
- To ensure the stable work of the Device and the external devices connected to the Device and to prolong the batter life, it is recommended to refer to the national related standard to use the power source that provides stable voltage with less interference from ripples. USP power source is recommended.
- Step 1 Connect the Device to the monitor.
- <u>Step 2</u> Plug in the power cable to the Device.
- <u>Step 3</u> Press the power button to turn on the Device. The power indicator light is on. On the connected monitor, the live view screen is displayed by default. If you turn on the Device during the time period that is configured for recording, the system starts recording after it is turned on, and you will see the icon indicating recording status is working in the specific channels.

## 5.1.2 Initializing the Device

When booting up for the first time, you need to configure the password information for **admin** (by default).
NOTE

To secure the Device, it is strongly recommended for you to properly keep the password for admin and modify it regularly.

#### Step 1 Turn on the Device.

The Device Initialization interface is displayed. See Figure 5-1.

Device Initialization			
1. Enter Password	<b>→</b>	2. Unlock Pattern	→ 3. Password Protection
User Password	admin		Use a password that has 8 to 32
Confirm Password			characters, it can be a combination of letter(s), number(s) and symbol(s) with at least two kinds of them
Prompt Question			.(please do not use special symbols like ' " ; : &)
			Next

Figure 5-1

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the password information for admin. For details, see Table 5-1.

Parameter	Description
User	By default, the user is <b>admin</b> .
Password	In the <b>Password</b> box, enter the password for admin.
	The new password can be set from 8 characters through 32
Confirm Password	characters and contain at least two types from number, letter and
	special characters (excluding"'", """, ";", ":" and "&").
	In the <b>Prompt Question</b> box, enter the information that can remind
	you of the password.
Prompt Question	NOTE NOTE
	On the login interface, click 📠, the prompt will display to help you
	find back the password.

Table 5-1

Step 3 Click Next.

The unlock pattern setting interface is displayed. See Figure 5-2.

Device Initialization				
1. Enter Password		2. Unlock Pattern	<b>→</b>	3. Password Protection
	Plea	se draw the unlock p	attern.	
		Figure 5.0		Back Skip

Figure 5-2

#### <u>Step 4</u> Draw a unlock pattern.

After the setting is completed, the password protection settings interface is displayed. See Figure 5-3.

- The pattern that you want to set must cross at least four points.
- If you do not want to configure the unlock pattern, click Skip.
- Once you have configured the unlock pattern, the system will require the unlock pattern as the default login method. If you skip this setting, enter the password for login.

Device Initialization		
1. Enter Passwo	rd $\rightarrow$ 2. Unlock Pattern $\rightarrow$ 3. I	Password Protection
Email Address Security Questions	To reset password, plea update in time	ase input properly or
Question 1	What is your favorite children's book?	<b>*</b>
Answer		
Question 2	What was the first name of your first boss?	
Answer		
Question 3	What is the name of your favorite fruit?	
Answer		
		Save

Figure 5-3

<u>Step 5</u> Configure the protection parameters for password. For details, see Table 5-2.
 After configuration, if you forgot the password for admin user, you can reset the password through the reserved email address or security questions. For details about resetting the password, see "5.1.3 Resetting Password."
 If you do not want to configure the settings, disable the email address and security questions functions on the interface.

Password	Description
Protection Mode	
	Enter the reserved email address.
	In the Email Address box, enter an email address for password
Email Address	reset. In case you forgot password, enter the security code that you
	will get from this reserved email address to reset the password of
	admin.
O a surritu	Configure the security questions and answers.
Security	In case you forgot password, enter the answers to the questions can
Questions	make you reset the password.

If you want to configure the email or security questions fucntion later or you want to change the configurations, select **Main Menu > ACCOUNT > USER**.

Table 5-2

<u>Step 6</u> Click **Save** to complete the settings.

The End-User License Agreement interface is displayed.

<u>Step 7</u> Select the I have read and agree to all terms check box.

Step 8 Click Next.

The **Startup Wizard** interface is displayed. For details about quick settings during startup, see "5.1.4 Setting Up with the Startup Wizard."

# 5.1.3 Resetting Password

You can reset the password through the QR code or the security questions.

 To reset through the QR code, make sure the Enable check box is selected in Main Menu > SYSTEM > SECURITY > Password Reset.

• To reset through the security questions, make sure the security quesitons is configured.

- <u>Step 1</u> Enter the login interface.
  - If you have configured unlock pattern, the unlock pattern login interface is displayed. See Figure 5-4. Click **Forgot Pattern**, the password login interface is displayed. See Figure 5-5.
  - If you did not configure unlock pattern, the password login interface is displayed. See Figure 5-5.

On the unlock pattern login interface, click **Switch User** to login; or on the password login interface, in the **User Nam**e list, select other users to login.



Figure 5-4

SYSTEM LOGIN	1		
User Name	admin		<b>5</b>
User Name	admin		a
Password			<b>R</b>
	OK	Cancel	



Step 2 Click

- If you did not set the reserved email address, the email entering interface is displayed. See Figure 5-6. Enter the email address, and then click **Next**, the **Reset the password** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-7.
- If you have set the reserved email address, the **Reset the password** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-7.

Reset the	password			
R	leset Type	QR Code		
E	mail Address		To reset password, please inpu	ut properly or update in time
				Next Cancel

Figure 5-6

- Reset the password		
Reset Type	QR Code	
SN: 00000000	000000000	
252	QR code on al interface	Note(For admin only): Please use an APP to scan the left QR code to get special strings. And then send the strings to support_gpwd@htmicrochip.com.
The security co Security code	de will be delivered to 2**	*@qq.com.
		Next Cancel

Figure 5-7

<u>Step 3</u> Rest the password.

QR code

Follow the onscreen instructions to get the security code in your reserved email address. In the **Security code** box, enter the security code.



- You are given the limited times to get the security code by scanning the QR code within 24 hours. Please operate carefully.
- Please use the security code received in your email box to reset the password within 24 hours; otherwise the security code becomes invalid.
- Security questions
- On the Reset the password interface as shown in Figure 5-6, in the Reset Type list, select Security Questions, the Security Questions interface is displayed, see Figure 5-8.

If you did not configure the security questions before, in the **Reset Type** list, there will be no **Security Questions**.

2) In the **Answer** box, enter the correct answers.

Reset the password		
Reset Type	Security Questions	
Question 1 Answer		
Question 2 Answer		
Question 3 Answer		
	Next Cancel	

Figure 5-8

Step 4 Click Next.

The new password resetting interface is displayed. See Figure 5-9.

Reset the password	
Reset password of (admin)	
New Password	Use a password that has 8 to 32
Confirm Password	characters, it can be a combination of letter(s), number(s) and symbol(s) with at
	Save Cancel

Figure 5-9

- <u>Step 5</u> In the **New Password** box, enter the new password and enter it again in the **Confirm Password** box.
- <u>Step 6</u> Click **Save**. The password resetting is started.

After resetting is completed, a pop-up message is displayed.

Step 7 Click OK.

A pop-up message is displayed asking if you want to sync the password with the remote devices, see Figure 5-10.

- Click **Cancel**, the resetting is finished.
- Click **OK**, the Sync Info interface is displayed. See Figure 5-10.

Reset the password			
Reset passwo	rd of (admin)		
New Password	d ••••••	Use a password that has	8 to 32
Confirm Pass	Message	<u>aharaatara itoon ha a aa</u>	mbination of —mbol(s) with at
	Do you want to sync Password device connecting via the defau		
	ОК	Cancel	
			Save Cancel

Figure 5-10

### NOTE

This message appears only when there are digital channels instead of complete analog channels.

S	/nc Ini	fo			
F	inishe	ed			
_					
	2	Channel	IP Address	Results	
			192.168.9.156	Password:Succeed	
	2	10	192.168.9.59	Password:Succeed	
	•				
				Finished	

Figure 5-11

# 5.1.4 Setting Up with the Startup Wizard

### 5.1.4.1 Entering Startup Wizard

The Startup Wizard helps you configure the basic settings to set up the Device.

After you have initialized the Device, the **Startup Wizard** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-12.



NOTE

If you select the **Auto-check for updates** check box, the system will notify you automatically when updates are available.

### 5.1.4.2 Configuring General Settings

You can configure the general settings for the Device such as Device name, language, and settings for instant playback.

You can also configure general settings by selecting **Main Menu > SYSTEM > GENERAL > General**.

<u>Step 1</u> On the **Startup Wizard** interface, click **Next**.

The **General** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-13.

General			
Device Name	XVR		
Device No.	8		
Language	ENGLISH		
Video Standard	NTSC		
Instant Play(Min.)	5		
Auto Logout(Min.)	10	Monitor Channel(s) when logou	t
Navigation Bar			
Mouse Sensitivity	•	+ 850	
		Back	ext

Figure 5-13

### <u>Step 2</u> Configure the general settings parameters. See Table 5-3.

Parameter	Description
Device Name	In the <b>Device Name</b> box, enter the Device name.
Device No.	In the <b>Device No.</b> box, enter a number for the Device.
Language	In the Language list, select a language for the Device system.
Video Standard	In the Video Standard list, select PAL or NTSC according to your actual situation.
Instant Play (Min.)	In the <b>Instant Play</b> box, enter the time length for playing back the recoded video. The value ranges from 5 to 60. On the live view control bar, click the instant playback button to play back
	the recorded video within the configured time.
Auto Logout (Min.)	In the <b>Auto Logout</b> box, enter the standby time for the Device. The Device automatically logs out when it is not working for the configured time period. You need to login the Device again. The value ranges from 0 to 60. 0 indicates there is not standby time for the Device. Click <b>Monitor Channel(s) when logout</b> . You can select the channels that you want to continue monitoring when you logged out.
Navigation Bar	Enable the navigation bar. When you click on the live view screen, the navigation bar is displayed.
Mouse Sensitivity	Adjust the speed of double-click by moving the slider. The bigger the value is, the faster the double-clicking speed must be.

### 5.1.4.3 Configuring Date and Time Settings

You can configure the system time, choose the time zone, set the daylight saving time, and enable the NTP server.

You can also configure date and time settings by selecting **Main Menu > SYSTEM > GENERAL > Date&Time**.

<u>Step 1</u> After you have configured the general settings, on the **General** interface, click **Next**. The **Date&Time** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-14.

Date&Time		
System Time	2018 -01 - 18 16 : 47 : 13	(GMT+08:00)Beijing,Urumqi,Singapore 🔻
Date Format	YYYY MM DD 🔹	
Date Separator		
Time Format	24-HOUR 🔻	
DST	📕 🧿 Week 🔿 Date	
Start Time	Jan 🔻 1st 👻 Su 💌	05:00
End Time	Jan 🔻 1st 💌 Mo 🔻	00:00
NTP		
Server	time.windows.com	Manual Update
Port	123	
Interval(Min.)	60	
		Back Next

Figure 5-14

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for date and time parameters. See Table 5-4.

Parameter	Description	
	In the System Time box, enter time for the system.	
	Click the time zone list, you can select a time zone for the system, and	
	the time in adjust automatically.	
System Time		
	Do not change the system time randomly; otherwise the recorded video	
	cannot be searched. It is recommended to avoid the recoding period or	
	stop recording first before you change the system time.	
Date Format	In the <b>Date Format</b> list, select a date format for the system.	
Date Separator	In the <b>Date Separator</b> list, select a separator style for the date.	
Time Format	In the <b>Time Format</b> list, select <b>12-HOUR</b> or <b>24-HOUR</b> for the time display style.	
DST	Enable the Daylight Saving Time function. Click Week or click Date.	
Start Time	Configure the start time and end time for the DST.	
End Time		

Parameter	Description
NTP	Enable the NTP function to sync the Device time with the NTP server.
Server	In the <b>Server</b> box, enter the IP address or domain name of the corresponding NTP server. Click <b>Manual Update</b> , the Device starts syncing with the server immediately.
Port	The system supports TCP protocol only and the default setting is 123.
Interval (Min.)	In the <b>Interval</b> box, enter the amount of time that you want the Device to sync time with the NTP server. The value ranges from 0 to 65535.

Table 5-4

### 5.1.4.4 Configuring Network Settings

You can configure the basic network settings such as net mode, IP version, and IP address of the Device.

You can also configure network settings by selecting **Main Menu > NETWORK > TCP/IP**.

<u>Step 1</u> After you have configured the date and time settings, on the **Date&Time** interface, click **Next**.

NETWORK					
Net Mode	Multi-address		Default Ethernet Port	Ethernet Por	t1 <del>-</del>
Ethernet Card	Ethernet Port1		IP Version	IPv4	
MAC Address					
DHCP					
IP Address	192 . 168 . 3	. 113			
Subnet Mask	255 . 255 . 0	. 0			
Default Gateway	192 . 168 . 0	. 1			
DNS DHCP					
Preferred DNS	8.8.8	. 8			
Alternate DNS	8.8.4	. 4			
MTU	1500				
Test			[	Back	Next

The **NETWORK** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-15.

Figure 5-15

Step 2	Configure the	settinas for	network	parameters. See 0.
0.00 2	••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••			

Parameter	Description		
	• Multi-address: Two Ethernet ports work separately through eith		
	of which you can request the Device to provide the services such		
Net Mode	as HTTP and RTSP. You need to configure a default Ethernet port		
	(usually the Ethernet port 1 by default) to request the services from		
	the device end such as DHCP, Email and FTP. If one of the two		

Parameter	Description		
	<ul> <li>Ethernet ports is disconnected as detected by networking testing, the system network status is regarded as offline.</li> <li>Fault Tolerance: Two Ethernet ports share one IP address. Normally only one Ethernet port is working and when this port fails, the other port will start working automatically to ensure the network connection.</li> <li>When testing the network status, the network is regarded as offline only when both of the two Ethernet ports are disconnected. The two Ethernet ports are used under the same LAN.</li> <li>Load Balance: Two network cards share one IP address and they are working at the same time to share the network load averagely. If one of them fails, the other can continue working normally. When testing the network status, the network is regarded as offline only when both of the two Ethernet ports are disconnected. The two Ethernet ports are used under the same LAN.</li> <li>More testing the network status, the network is regarded as offline only when to the two Ethernet ports are disconnected. The two Ethernet ports are used under the same LAN.</li> <li>More testing the network status, the network is regarded as offline only when both of the two Ethernet ports are disconnected. The two Ethernet ports are used under the same LAN.</li> <li>NOTE</li> </ul>		
Default Ethernet Port	The Device with single Ethernet port does not support this function. In the <b>Ethernet Card</b> list, select an Ethernet port as a default port. This setting is available only when the <b>Multi-address</b> is selected in the <b>Net Mode</b> list.		
IP Version	In the <b>IP Version</b> list, you can select <b>IPv4</b> or <b>IPv6</b> . Both versions are supported for access.		
MAC Address	Displays the MAC address of the Device.		
DHCP	<ul> <li>Enable the DHCP function. The IP address, subnet mask and default gateway are not available for configuration once DHCP is enabled.</li> <li>If DHCP is effective, the obtained information will display in the IP Address box, Subnet Mask box and Default Gateway box. If not, all values show 0.0.0.0.</li> <li>If you want manually configure the IP information, disable the DHCP function first.</li> <li>If PPPoE connection is successful, the IP address, subnet mask, default gateway, and DHCP are not available for configuration.</li> </ul>		
IP Address	Enter the IP address and configure the corresponding subnet mask and		
Subnet Mask	default gateway.		
Default Gateway	IP address and default gateway must be in the same network segment.		
DNS DHCP	Enable the DHCP function to get the DNS address from router.		
Preferred DNS	In the <b>Preferred DNS</b> box, enter the IP address of DNS.		
Alternate DNS	In the Alternate DNS box, enter the IP address of alternate DNS.		
MTU	<ul> <li>In the MTU box, enter a value for network card. The value ranges from 1280 byte through 1500 byte. The default is 1500.</li> <li>NOTE</li> <li>Modifying MTU value will cause network interruption and restart,</li> </ul>		

Parameter	Description				
	which interrupt the network service. There is a pop-up message to				
	let you confirm if you want to save the modification, if yes, the				
	modification takes effect.				
	Suggested MTU values are as below.				
	$\diamond$ 1500: The biggest value of Ethernet information package. This				
	value is typically selected if there is no PPPoE or VPN				
	connection, and it is also the default value of some routers,				
	network adapters and switches.				
	♦ 1492: Optimized value for PPPoE.				
	♦ 1468: Optimized value for DHCP.				
	$\diamond$ 1450: Optimized value for VPN.				
Test	Click <b>Test</b> to test if the entered IP address and gateway are				
1621	interworking.				

Table 5-5

### 5.1.4.5 Configuring P2P Settings

You can add the Device into your cell phone client or the platform to manage.

You can also configure P2P function by selecting **Main Menu > NETWORK > P2P**.

Make sure the DVR is connected into the Internet, and if yes, in the **Status** box of the P2P interface, it shows **Online**.

<u>Step 1</u> After you have configured the network settings, on the **NETWORK** interface, click

Next.

The <b>P2P</b> interface is disp	layed. See Figure 5-16.
----------------------------------	-------------------------

P2P				
Enable Status	Offline			
Cell Phone Client		Device SN Scan the QR code on the actual interface		
			Back	Next

Figure 5-16



#### Step 3 Click Apply.

You can start adding the device.

- Cell Phone Client: Use your mobile phone to scan the QR code to add the device into the Cell Phone Client, and then you can start accessing the Device.
- Platform: Obtain the Device SN by scanning the QR code. Go to the P2P management platform and add the Device SN into the platform. Then you can access and manage the device in the WAN. For details, please refer to the P2P operation manual.

D NOTE

You can also enter the QR code of Cell Phone Client and Device SN by clicking

on the top right of the interfaces after you have entered the Main Menu.

To use this function, take adding device into Cell Phone Client as an example.

#### Adding Device into Cell Phone Client

- <u>Step 1</u> Use your cell phone to scan the QR code under Cell Phone Client to download the application.
- <u>Step 2</u> On your cell phone, open the application, and then tap



The menu is displayed. You can start adding the device.

- 1) Tap Device Manager.
  - The **Device Manager** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-17.



Figure 5-17

2) Tap an the top right corner.

The interface requiring device initialization is displayed. A pop-up message reminding you to make sure the Device is initialized is displayed.

3) Tap **OK**.

- ◇ If the Device has not been initialized, Tap **Device Initialization** to perform initializing by following the onscreen instructions.
- $\diamond~$  If the Device has been initialized, you can start adding it directly.
- 4) Tap Add Device.

The Add Device interface is displayed. See Figure 5-18.

You can add wireless device or wired device. The Manual takes adding wired device as an example.

<	P2P	
Register Mode:		P2P
Name:		
SN:		
Username:		admin
Password:		
Live Preview:		Extra >
Playback:		Extra >
Start I	_ive Preview	

Figure 5-18

5) Tap **P2P**.

The **P2P** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-19.

<	P2P	
Register Mode:		P2P
Name:		
SN:		
Username:		admin
Password:		
Live Preview:		Extra >
Playback:		Extra >
		_
Start I	_ive Preview	

Figure 5-19

6) Enter a name for the DVR, the username and password, scan the QR code under **Device SN**.

#### 7) Tap Start Live Preview.

The Device is added and displayed on the live view interface of the cell phone. See Figure 5-20.



Figure 5-20

### 5.1.4.6 Configuring Encode Settings

You can configure the settings of main stream and sub stream for the Device.

You can also configure encode settings by selecting **Main Menu > CAMERA > ENCODE > Encode**.

<u>Step 1</u> After you have configured the P2P settings, on the **P2P** interface, click **Next**.

```
Encode
     Channel
                                                     Sub Stream
     Main Stream
     Smart Codec
                          General
                                                                          Sub Stream1
                          H.265
                                                                          H.265
     Compression
                                                     Compression
                          1920x1080(1080P) -
                                                                          352x288(CIF)
                                                     Resolution
     Frame Rate(FPS)
                          25
     Bit Rate Type
                          CBR
                                                     Bit Rate Type
                                                                          CBR
     I Frame Interval
                          1 S
                                                     I Frame Interval
                                                                          1 S
     Bit Rate(Kb/S)
                                                     Bit Rate(Kb/S)
                          2048
                                                                          320
                          More Setting
                                                                          More Setting
    Default
                  Сору
                                                                               Back
```

The **Encode** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-21.

Figure 5-21

Step 2 Configure the settings for the main/sub streams parameters. See Table 5-6.

Parameter	Description				
Channel	In the Channel list, select the channel that you want to configure the				
Channel	settings for.				
	Enable the smart codec function. This function can reduce the video				
Smart Codec	bit stream for non-important recorded video to maximize the storage				
	space.				
	• Main Stream: In the <b>Type</b> list, select <b>General</b> , <b>MD</b> (Motion				
Туре	Detect), or <b>Alarm</b> .				
	Sub Stream: This setting is not configurable.				
	In the <b>Compression</b> list, select the encode mode.				
	H.265: Main profile encoding.				
	H.264H: High profile encoding. Low bit stream with high				
Compression	definition. This setting is recommended.				
	H.264: Main profile encoding.				
	• H.264B: Baseline profile encoding. This setting requires higher bit				
	stream compared with other settings for the same definition.				
	In the Resolution list, select resolution for the video.				
Resolution	The maximum video resolution might be different dependent on your				
	device model.				

Parameter	Description				
	Configure the frames per second for the video. The higher the value,				
	the clearer and smoother the image will become. Frame rate changes				
Frame Rate	along with the resolution.				
(FPS)	Generally, in PAL format, you can select the value from 1 through 25;				
(ГРЗ)	in NTSC format, you can select the value from 1 through 30. However,				
	the actual range of frame rate that you can select depends on the				
	capability of the Device.				
	In the <b>Bit Rate Type</b> list, select <b>CBR</b> (Constant Bit Rate) or <b>VBR</b>				
Bit Rate Type	(Variable Bit Rate). If you select <b>CBR</b> , the image quality cannot be				
	configured; if you select VBR, the image quality can be configured.				
Quality	This function is available if you select <b>VBR</b> in the <b>Bit Rate</b> List.				
Quanty	The bigger the value is, the better the image will become.				
I Frame Interval	The interval between two reference frames.				
	In the <b>Bit Rate</b> list, select a value or enter a customized value to				
Bit Rate (Kb/S)	change the image quality. The bigger the value is, the better the				
	image will become.				
Video	Enable the function for sub stream.				
	Click <b>More Setting</b> , the <b>More Setting</b> interface is displayed.				
Audio Encode	Audio Encode: This function is enabled by default for main				
	stream. You need to manually enable it for sub stream 1. Once				
	this function is enabled, the recorded video file is composite				
Audio Source	audio and video stream.				
	• Audio Source: In the <b>Audio Source</b> list, you can select <b>LOCAL</b>				
	and HDCVI.				
Audio Format	$\diamond$ LOCAL: The audio signal is input from Audio In port.				
	$\diamond$ HDCVI: The audio signal is input from HDCVI camera.				
	• Audio Format: In the <b>Audio Forma</b> t list, select a format that you				
	need.				

Table 5-6

### 5.1.4.7 Configuring Snapshot Settings

You can configure the basic snapshot settings such as quantity of snapshot each time, channel(s) to take snapshot, and image size and quality of snapshot.

You can also configure general settings by selecting **Main Menu > CAMERA > ENCODE > Snapshot**.

For more information about snapshot settings, see "5.8 Configuring Snapshot Settings." <u>Step 1</u> After you have configured the encode settings, on the **Encode** interface, click **Next**.

The **SNAPSHOT** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-22.

SNAPSHOT				
Manual Snap		/Time		
Channel	1 <b>•</b>			
Mode	General 🔹			
Image Size	352x288(CIF) -			
Image Quality	4 -			
Interval	1 Second 👻			
Default Copy	/		Back	Next

Figure 5-22

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the snapshot parameters. See Table 5-7.

Parameter	Description		
Manual Snap	In the Manual Snap list, select how many snapshots you want to take		
Mariual Shap	each time.		
Channel	In the Channel list, select the channel that you want to configure the		
Channel	settings for.		
Mode	In the <b>Mode</b> list, select type of snapshots.		
Image Size	In the Image Size list, select a value for the image.		
Image Quality	Configure the image quality by 6 levels. The higher the level, the		
image Quality	better the image will become.		
Interval	Configure or customize the snapshot frequency.		

Table 5-7

### 5.1.4.8 Configuring Basic Storage Settings

You can configure the settings for the situations when HDD is full, file length and time length of recorded video, and the settings if to auto-delete the old files.

You can also configure basic storage settings by selecting **Main Menu > STORAGE > BASIC**. <u>Step 1</u> After you have configured the encode settings, on the **SNAPSHOT** interface, click

#### Next.

The **BASIC** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-23.

BASIC				
HDD Full	Overwrite -			
Pack Mode	Time Length 🔹	60	Min.	
Auto-Delete Old Files	Never			
			Back	Next

Figure 5-23

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the basic storage settings parameters. See Table 5-8.

Parameter	Description				
	Configure the settings for the situation when all the read/write discs are full, and there is no more free disc.				
HDD Full	Select Stop Record to stop recording				
	• Select <b>Overwrite</b> to overwrite the recorded video files always				
	from the earliest time.				
Pack Mode	Configure the time length and file length for each recorded video.				
Auto-Delete Old	Configure whether to delete the old files and if yes, in the Auto-Delete				
_	Old Files list, select Customized to configure the time length for how				
Files	long you want to keep the old files.				

Table 5-8

### 5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule

You can configure the schedule for the recorded video such as channels to record, alarm settings, and the armed period.

You can also configure recorded video storage settings by selecting **Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Record**.

<u>Step 1</u> After you have configured the basic storage settings, on the **BASIC** interface, click **Next**.

The **Record** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-24.



Figure 5-24

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the record settings parameters. See Table 5-9.

Parameter	Description				
Channel	In the <b>Channel</b> list, select a channel to record the video.				
Pre-record	In the <b>Pre-record</b> list, enter the amount of time that you want to start				
FIE-IECOIU	the recording in advance.				
	If there are several HDDs installed to the Device, you can set one of				
	the HDDs as the redundant HDD to save the recorded files into				
	different HDDs. In case one of the HDDs is damaged, you can find the				
	backup in the other HDD.				
	• Select Main Menu > STORAGE > HDD MANAGER, and then				
	set a HDD as redundant HDD.				
	• Select Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDUE > Record, and				
	then select the <b>Redundancy</b> check box.				
Redundancy	$\diamond$ If the selected channel is not recording, the redundancy				
rteundancy	function takes effect next time you record no matter you				
	select the check box or not.				
	$\diamond$ If the selected channel is recording, the current recorded				
	files will be packed, and then start recording according to the				
	new schedule.				
	NOTE NOTE				
	<ul> <li>Not all models support this function.</li> </ul>				
	• The redundant HDD only back up the recorded videos but not				
	snapshots.				
	Select the check box of the event type which includes <b>General</b> , <b>MD</b>				
Event type	(motion detect, video loss, tempering, diagnosis), <b>Alarm</b> (loT alarms,				
	local alarms, alarms from alarm box, IPC external alarms, IPC Offline				
	alarms), <b>MD&amp;Alarm</b> , <b>Intel</b> (IVS events, face detection), and <b>POS</b> .				

Parameter	Description				
	Define a period during which the configured recording setting is				
Period	active.				
	The system only activates the alarm in the defined period.				
Сору	Click <b>Copy</b> to copy the settings to other channels.				
	Table 5-9				

- <u>Step 3</u> Define the video recording period by drawing or editing. By default, it is active all the time.
  - Define the period by drawing.
  - 1) Select the check box of event type. See Figure 5-25.



- 2) Define a period. The system supports maximum six periods.

  - $\diamond$  Define for several days of a week: Click  $\square$  before each day one by one, the

icon switches to 📟. You can define the period for the selected days

simultaneously.

3) On the timeline, drag to define a period. The Device starts recoding the selected event type in the defined period. See Figure 5-26.



Figure 5-26

The color bar indicates the event type that is effective in a defined period: \$\$\$ \$\$ \$\$ \$\$ \$\$ \$\$ \$\$ NOTE \$\$ \$\$ \$\$ NOTE \$\$ \$\$ \$\$ \$\$ \$\$ \$\$ \$\$ \$\$ \$

 Recording priority in case of event types are overlapped: MD&Alarm > Alarm > Intel > MD > General.

- Select the check box of event type, and then click for the defined period.
- When selecting MD&Alarm, the respective check box of MD and Alarm will be cleared.
- Define the period by editing. Take Sunday as an example.
- 1) Click

The **Period** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-27.

Period					-				
Current Dat	e: Sunda	ау							
Period 1	00:00	- 24:00	🗸 General	MD	🗌 Alarm	MD&Alarm	Intel	POS	
Period 2	00:00	- 24:00	General	D MD	🗌 Alarm	MD&Alarm	Intel	POS	
Period 3	00:00	- 24:00	General	D MD	🗌 Alarm	MD&Alarm	🗌 Intel	POS	
Period 4	00:00	- 24:00	General	D MD	🗌 Alarm	MD&Alarm	🗌 Intel	POS	
Period 5	00:00	- 24:00	General	D MD	🗌 Alarm	MD&Alarm	🗌 Intel		
Period 6	00:00	- 24:00	General	MD	Alarm	MD&Alarm	🗌 Intel	POS	
Сору									
🗌 All									
🖂 Sunday		Monday	Tuesday	Wednesda	y 🗌 Thurso	lay 🗌 Friday	🗌 Sat	turday	
								Apply	Cancel



- 2) Enter the time frame for the period and select the event check box.
  - $\diamond$  There are six periods for you to set for each day.
  - ◇ Under Copy, select All to apply the settings to all the days of a week, or select specific day(s) that you want to apply the settings to.
- 3) Click **Apply** to save the settings.

<u>Step 4</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

- NOTE
  - Click **Copy** to copy the settings to other channels.
  - After configuring the recording schedule settings, you need to perform the following operations to start recording according to the defined schedule.
    - Enable the alarm event and cofigure the settings for the recording channel.
       For details, see "5.10 Alarm Events Settings."
    - You need to enable the recording function, see "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."

### 5.1.4.10 Configuring Snapshot Storage Schedule

You can configure the storage schedule for the snapshot such as channels to take snapshot, alarm settings, and the armed period.

You can also configure snapshot storage settings by selecting **Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot**. <u>Step 1</u> After you have configured the video recording settings, on the **Record** interface, click **Next**.

Snapshot Channel 🛃 General Alarm MD MD&Alarm Intel 22 24 6 10 12 16 18 20 0 8 Sunday \$ Monday Tuesday Wednesday ۵ ۵ Saturday ۵ Default Сору Back Finished

The SNAPSHOT interface is displayed. See Figure 5-28.

Figure 5-28

#### Step 2 Configure the snapshot settings parameters. See Table 5-10.

Parameter	Description				
Channel	In the <b>Channel</b> list, select a channel to take a snapshot.				
Select the check box of the event type which includes Genera					
Event type	Alarm, MD&Alarm, Intel, and POS.				
	Define a period during which the configured snapshot setting is active.				
Period	For details about defining a period, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded				
	Video Storage Schedule."				
Сору	Click <b>Copy</b> to copy the settings to other channels.				

Table 5-10

#### Step 3 Click Finished.

A pop-up message is displayed.

#### Step 4 Click OK.

The live view screen is displayed. The setting up with startup wizard is completed. You can start using the Device.

# 5.2 Live View

After you logged in the Device, the live view is displayed. See Figure 5-29. The number of channels displayed depends on your model.

To enter the live view screen from other interfaces, click used on the top right of the screen.



Figure 5-29

# 5.2.1 Live View Screen

You can view the live video from the connected cameras through each channel on the screen.

- By default, the system time, channel name and channel number are displayed on each channel window. This setting can be configured by selecting Main Menu > CAMERA > OVERLAY.
- The figure in the bottom right corner represents channel number. If the channel position is changed or the channel name is modified, you can recognize the channel number by this figure and then perform the operations such as record query and playback.

For the icons displayed on each channel, see Table 5-11.

lcon	Function
Ĭ	Indicates recording status. This icon displays when the video is being recorded.
*	This icon displays when the motion detection occurs in the scene.
~	This icon displays when the video loss is detected.
1	This icon displays when the channel monitoring is locked.
	T-11- 5 44

Table 5-11

#### 

To switch the position of two channels, point to one of the two channels, and then drag the window to the other channel.

# 5.2.2 Live View Control bar

The live view control bar provides you access to perform the operations such as playback, zoom, real-time backup, manual snapshot, voice talk, adding remote devices, and streams switch.

When you move the pointer to the top middle position of a channel window, the live view control bar is displayed. See Figure 5-30 for analog channel and Figure 5-31 for digital channel.

If there is not operation for six seconds after the control bar is displayed, the control bar hides automatically.



Figure 5-30



Figure 5-31

1	No.	Function	No.	Function	No.	Function
,	1	Instant Play	4	Manual Snap	7	Camera Registration
	2	Digital Zoom	5	Mute		

No.	Function	No.	Function	No.	Function
3	Real-time	6	Audio Talk		
	Backup				

### 5.2.2.1 Instant Playback

You can play back the previous five minutes to sixty minutes of the recorded video.

By clicking the instant playback interface is displayed. The instant playback has the

following features:

- Move the slider to choose the time you want to start playing.
- Play, pause and close playback.
- The information such as channel name and recording status icon are shielded during • instant playback and will not display until exited.
- During playback, screen split layout switch is not allowed.
- To change the playback time, select Main Menu > SYSTEM > GENERAL, in the Instant • Play box, enter the time you want to play back. See Figure 5-32.

🗱 SYSTEM					
> GENERAL	General	Date&Time	Holiday		
RS232	Device Nam		XVR		
SECURITY	Device No.		8		
SYSTEM MAINTAIN			ENGLISH		
IMP/EXP	Language				
	Video Standa		PAL		-
DEFAULT	Instant Play(	Min.)	5		
UPGRADE	Auto Logout	(Min.)	2		Monitor Channel(s) when logout
	IPC Time Sy	nc			
	IPC Time Sy	nc Period (hour)	24		
	Navigation E	ar			
	Mouse Sens	itivity		• +	850
					Apply Back

Figure 5-32

### 5.2.2.2 Digital Zoom

You can enlarge a specific area of the image to view the details by either of the following two ways.

• Click 💽, the icon switches to 🤽. Hold down the left mouse button to select the area

you want to enlarge. The area is enlarged after the left mouse button is released.

• Point to the center that you want to enlarge, rotate the wheel button to enlarge the area.

- For some models, when the image is enlarged in the first way described previously, the selected area is zoomed proportionally according to the window.
- When the image is in the enlarged status, you can drag the image toward any direction to view the other enlarged areas.
- Right-click on the enlarged image to return the original status.

### 5.2.2.3 Real-time Backup

You can record the video of any channel and save the clip into a USB storage device.

By clicking *Link*, the recording is started. To stop recording, click this icon again. The clip is automatically saved into the connected USB storage device.

### 5.2.2.4 Manual Snapshot

You can take one to five snapshots of the video and save into a USB storage device.

By clicking [11], you can take snapshots. The snapshots are automatically saved into the

connected USB storage device. You can view the snapshots on your PC.

To change the quantity of snapshots, select **Main Menu > CAMERA > ENCODE > Snapshot**, in the **Manual Snap** list, select the snapshot quantity.

### 5.2.2.5 Mute (Analog channel only)

You can mute the video sound by clicking . This function is supported in single-channel view.

### 5.2.2.6 Bidirectional Talk (Digital channel only)

You can perform the voice interaction between the Device and the remote device to improve efficiency of emergency. This function is supported only when the remotely connected IPC device supports bidirectional talk.

- Click A the icon switches to . the bidirectional talk of the remote device is turned on. The bidirectional talk of other digital channels is disabled.
- Click solution to cancel the bidirectional talk. The bidirectional talk of other digital channels is resumed.

### 5.2.2.7 Remote Devices (Digital channel only)

You can view the information of remote devices and add new remote devices to replace the current connected devices.

By clicking E, the **Camera Registration** interface is displayed. For details about adding the remote devices, see "5.6 Configuring Remote Devices."

### 5.2.3 Navigation Bar

You can access the functions to perform operations through the function icons on the navigation bar. For example, you can access Main Menu and switch window split mode. See Figure 5-33.

The navigation bar is disabled by default. It does not appear in the live view screen until it is enabled. To enable it, select **Main Menu > SYSTEM > GENERAL**, enable the Navigation Bar, and then click **Apply**.



Icon	Function
	Open <b>Main Menu</b> .
-	Expand or condense the navigation bar.
	Select view layout.
Œ	Go to the previous screen.
Ð	Go to the next screen.
t⊐	Enable tour function. The icon switches to
	Open the PTZ control panel. For details, see "5.4 Controlling PTZ Cameras."
ବ	Open the <b>Color Setting</b> interface. For details, see "5.2.5 Color Setting." NOTE
	This function is supported only in single-channel layout.
Q	Open the record search interface. For detail, see "5.9 Playing Back Video."
A	Open the <b>EVENT</b> interface to view the device alarm status. For details, see "5.19.3 Viewing Event Information."

Figure 5-33

Function
Open the CHANNEL INFO interface to display the information of
each channel.
Open the CAMERA REGISTRATION interface. For details, see
"5.6.1 Adding Remote Devices."
Open the <b>NETWORK</b> interface. For details, see "5.14.1
Configuring Network Settings."
Open the HDD MANAGER interface. For details, see "5.17.3
Configuring HDD Manager."
Open the USB MANAGER interface. For details about USB
operations, see "5.13.2 Backing up Files", "5.19.2 Viewing Log
Information", "5.18.5 Exporting and Importing System Settings",
"5.18.7 Upgrading the Device."

Table 5-12

# 5.2.4 Shortcut Menu

You can quickly access some function interfaces such as main menu, record search, PTZ setting, color setting and select the view split mode.

Right-click on the live view screen, the shortcut menu is displayed. See Figure 5-34. For details about the functions of shortcut menu, see Table 5-13.

After you access any interface through shortcut menu, you can return to the previous screen by right-clicking on the current screen.



Figure 5-34

Function	Description			
Main Menu	Open Main Menu interface.			
Search	Open the <b>PLAYBACK</b> interface where you can search and play			
Search	back record files.			
PTZ	Open the <b>PTZ</b> interface.			
View Layout	Configure the live view screen as a single-channel layout or			
View Layout	multi-channel layout.			
Previous Screen	Click Previous Screen to go to the previous screen. For example, if			
Next Screen	you are using 4-split mode, the first screen is displaying the			
	channel 1-4, click <b>Next screen</b> , you can view channel 5-8.			
	Open the CAMERA REGISTRATION interface. For details, see			
Camera Registration	"5.6 Configuring Remote Devices			
	Adding Remote Devices."			
	• Select <b>Record</b> , you can configure the recording mode as			
Manual	Auto or Manual, or stop the recording. You can also enable or			
Manual	disable snapshot function			
	• Select <b>Alarm Out</b> , you can configure alarm output settings.			
	• Select <b>General</b> , the layout of live view screen is as default.			
Preview Mode	• Select Show Face List, the detected face snapshots are			
	displayed in the bottom of the live view screen.			
Auto Focus	Point to the channel window and right-click on it to open the			
Autorocus	shortcut menu, and then click Auto Focus.			

Function	Description				
	NOTE NOTE				
	Not all cameras support this function.				
Color Setting	Open the COLOR interface where you can adjust the video image				
Color Setting	color.				
Image Click to modify the camera properties.					
	Table 5-13				

Table 5-13

# 5.2.5 Color Setting

You can adjust the video image color effect such as sharpness, brightness, and contrast. The parameters are different according to the connected camera type. Take analog channel as an example.

In the live view screen, right-click on the analog channel to see the shortcut menu, and then select Color Setting, the COLOR interface is displayed. See Figure 5-35.

> COLOR Period Period 1 Effective Time 00:00 - 24:00 Saturation 0 Brightness 0 Contrast 0 Hue • Sharpness - -0 Color Mode Standard EQ - 🖸 റ 🖬 Position 0 Default Customized Apply Back Figure 5-35

For details, see "5.5.1 Configuring Image Settings."

Parameter	Description			
Period	Divide 24 hours into two periods and configure the corresponding			
Fenou	color settings.			
Effective Time	Enable the function and then set the effective time for each period.			
	Adjust the sharpness of image edge. The bigger the value is, the			
Sharpness	more obvious the image edge, and the noise is also greater.			
	The value ranges from 1 to 15. The default value is 1.			

Parameter	Description
Hue	Adjust the hue of image. The value ranges from 0 to 100. The
The	default value is 50.
	Adjust the image brightness. The value ranges from 0 to 100. The
	default value is 50.
	The bigger the value is, the brighter the image will become. You
Brightness	can adjust this value when the image as a whole looks dark or
	bright. However, the image is likely to become dim if the value is
	too big.
	The recommended range is between 40 and 60.
	Adjust the image contrast. The bigger the value is, the more
	obvious the contrast between the light area and dark area will
	become. You can adjust this value when the contrast is not
Contrast	obvious. However, if the value is too big, the dark area is likely to
	become darker and the light area over exposed. If the value is too
	small, the image is likely to become dim. The value ranges from 0 to 100. The default value is 50. The
	recommended range is between 40 and 60.
	Adjust the color shades. The bigger the value, the lighter the color
	will become. This value does not influence the general image
Saturation	lightness.
	The value ranges from 0 to 100. The default value is 50. The
	recommended range is between 40 and 60.
	In the Color Mode list, you can select Standard, Soft, Bright,
	Colorful, Bank, Customized 1, Customized 2, Customized 3,
Color Mode	and Customized 4.
	The sharpness, hue, brightness, contrast and saturation will adjust
	automatically according to the selected color mode.
	Enhance the image effect. Adjust the effect value.
	Click , image is adjusted to the optimized effect
EQ	automatically.
	Click      the current effect setting will be locked.
	NOTE NOTE
	Only HD analog channel supports this function.
	Adjust the display position of the image in the channel window. The
Desition	value indicates pixel. The default value is 16.
Position	NOTE NOTE
	This function is only supported by analog channel.

Parameter	Description			
Customized	You can customize four color modes.			
	1. Click Customized. The Customized Color interface is			
	displayed.			
	2. In the <b>Color Mode</b> list, select <b>Customized 1</b> , for example.			
	Then configure the settings for sharpness, hue, brightness,			
	contrast and saturation. If you select All, the configuration will			
	applies to all four customized color modes.			
	3. Click <b>OK</b> .			
	4. On the COLOR interface, in the Color Mode list, you can			
	select the customized color mode.			

Table 5-14

# 5.2.6 Live View Display

### 5.2.6.1 Configuring Display Settings

You can configure the display effect such as displaying time title and channel title, adjusting image transparency, and selecting the resolution.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > DISPLAY > Display.

The **DISPLAY** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-36.

	📮 DISPLAY				LIVE	💄 🕞 🗕 🛄
>	DISPLAY	Main Screen	Main Screen			
	VIEW				Extra Screen	
	TOUR	Out Port	VGA/HDMI 1/Video out	Enable		
	ZERO-CHANNEL		Time Title	Out Port		
	TV ADJUST	V	Channel Title	Resolution 12		
			Original Rate			
		V	IVS Rule Preview			
		Transparency	- •	+ 0%		
		Resolution	1280x1024			
		Preview Mode	Show Face List			
					Apply	Back

Figure 5-36



Parameter Description	arameter
-----------------------	----------

Parameter		Description	
	Out Port	Indicates the main screen port.	
Main Screen	Time Title	Select the <b>Time Title</b> check box, the current system time displays in each channel window in live view screen. To hide the time, clear the check box.	
	Channel Title	Select the <b>Channel Title</b> check box, the channel name, channel number and recording status display in each channel window in live view screen. To hide the time, clear the check box.	
	Original Rate	Select the <b>Original Rate</b> check box, the video image displays in its actual size in the channel window.	
	IVS Rule Preview	Select the <b>IVS Rule Preview</b> check box to enable IVS rule preview function.	
	Transparency	Configure the transparency of the graphical user interface (GUI). The higher the value, the more transparent the GUI becomes.	
	Resolution	Select resolution for the video. The default resolution for VGA port and HDMI port is 1280×1024. NOTE Some of the resolution options might not be supported on the HDMI port.	
	Preview Mode	<ul> <li>General: No information is displayed on the channel window.</li> <li>Show Face List: Displays the detected face snapshots taken as a result of face detection on the bottom of the live view screen.</li> <li>NOTE</li> <li>Not all models support this function.</li> </ul>	
Extra Screen	Enable	Enable extra screen function. After this function is enabled, you can select which port as extra screen port, and the other port automatically becomes the main screen port.	
	Out Port	Select the VGA port or HDMI port as the port connected by a secondary monitor. For example, if you select HDMI port as the extra screen port, the VGA port automatically becomes the main screen port.	
	Resolution	Select resolution for the video. The default resolution for VGA port and HDMI port is 1280×720.	
<ul> <li>NOTE</li> <li>The main menu does not display on the extra screen.</li> <li>If you do not enable the extra screen function, both the VGA port and HDMI port display the same image.</li> </ul>			

Table 5-15
## 5.2.6.2 Configuring Viewing Layout

You can configure the view layout in the live view screen.

### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > DISPLAY > VIEW.

The **View Setting** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-37.

📮 DISPLAY				
DISPLAY	View Setting			
> VIEW	view Setting			
TOUR				
ZERO-CHANNEL	1 •	2 👻	3 -	4 -
TV ADJUST				
	5 🔻	6 👻	7 👻	8 -
	9 -	10 -	11 -	12 -
		10		
	13 🔻	14 -	15 👻	16 -
				Apply Back

Figure 5-37

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the view layout by clicking the layout buttons on the bottom. See Figure 5-38.



Figure 5-38

For example, click and select **9-16**, the view layout changes immediately, see Figure 5-39.

	💻 DISPLAY				
	DISPLAY	View Setting			
>	VIEW				
	TOUR				
	ZERO-CHANNEL				10 💌
	TV ADJUST				
			9 👻		11 *
					12 🔻
		16 🔻	15 -	14 💌	13 -
		<b>11 11 111 125</b>			
					Apply
					Apply Back



<u>Step 3</u> Adjust the position of channels if needed.

In the channel list, for example, in the channel 9 list, you can select 10, and then the channel 9 and channel 10 exchange positions.

<u>Step 4</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings. The live view screen displays the same layout as configured in this section.

# 5.2.6.3 Configuring Zero-Channel Settings

You can view several video sources on one channel on the web end.

Step 1 Select Main Menu > DISPLAY > ZERO-CHANNEL.

The **ZERO-CHANNEL** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-40.

💻 DISPLAY			
DISPLAY VIEW TOUR	Enable Compression	H.264	
> ZERO-CHANNEL	Resolution	704*576(D1)	
TV ADJUST	Frame Rate(FPS) Bit Rate(Kb/S)	25 1024	
			Apply Back

Figure 5-40

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the zero-channel parameters. See Table 5-16.

Parameter	Description
Enable	Enable zero-channel function.
Compression	In the <b>Compression</b> list, select the video compression standard
Compression	according to the device capability. The default is H.264.
Resolution	In the <b>Resolution</b> list, select the video resolution. The default is
Resolution	704×576 (D1).
Frame Rate	Select a value between 1 and 25 for PAL standard, and between 1
	and 30 for NTSC standard. The actual arrange is decided and
(FPS)	selected dependent on the Device capability.
Bit Data (Kh/S)	The default value is 1024Kb/S. The actual arrange is decided and
Bit Rate (Kb/S)	selected dependent on the Device capability and frame rate.

Table 5-16

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to save the settings.

In the live interface on the web, click multi-channel modes, and then you can view the local video image.

## 5.2.6.4 Configuring TV

Not all models support this function.

You can adjust the border margins in top, bottom, left and right directions as well as the brightness of the monitor connected to the Video out port of the Device.

Step 1 Select Main Menu > DISPLAY > TV ADJUST.

The TV ADJUST interface is displayed. See Figure 5-41.

📃 DISPLAY				LIVE 💄 💽 🚆
DISPLAY VIEW TOUR ZERO-CHANNEL	Top Margin Bottom Margin Left Margin	- 0 - 0 - 0		
<ul> <li>TV ADJUST</li> </ul>	Right Margin Brightness	-0	+ 0 + 128	
	Default			Apply Back

Figure 5-41

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the parameters according to your actual situation.

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

# 5.2.7 Configuring Tour Settings

You can configure a tour of selected channels to repeat playing videos. The videos display in turn according to the channel group configured in tour settings. The system is playing one channel group for a certain period and then automatically changes to the next channel group. Step 1 Select **Main Menu > DISPLAY > TOUR**.

The **TOUR** interface is displayed. There are Main Screen tab and Extra Screen tab, see Figure 5-42 and Figure 5-43.

<b>_</b>	DISPLAY			
D	ISPLAY	Main Screen	Extra Screen	
VI	IEW	Enable		
	OUR	Interval(Sec.)	5	
ZI	ERO-CHANNEL	Video Detect	View 1	
T١	V ADJUST	Alarm	View 1	
		Window Split	View 1	
		16 √ 1 √ 1	Channel Group	^
		1 √ 1 2 √ 2		
				=
		9 √ 9 10 √ 10		
		11 11		
		12 🗸 12		•
				•
		Add	Modify Delete Move up Move down	
				Apply Back
				Busic



📮 DISPLAY		LIVE 🕹 💽 🐰
DISPLAY	Main Screen	Extra Screen
VIEW	Enable	
> TOUR	Interval(Sec.)	
ZERO-CHANNEL		View 1
TV ADJUST		
	10 ✓ 1 ✓ 1	Channel Group
	1 <b>√</b> 1 2 <b>√</b> 2	
	10 🗸 10	
	Add	Modify Delete Move up Move down
		Apply Back

Figure 5-43

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the tour parameters for both Main Screen and Extra Screen. See Table 5-17.

Enable tour function.	
Enter the amount of time that you want each channel group displays	
on the screen. The value ranges from 5 seconds to 120 seconds, and	
the default value is 5 seconds.	
Select the View 1 or View 8 for Motion Detect tour and Alarm Tour	
(system alarm events).	
In the Window Split list, select View 1, View 4, View 8, or other	
modes that are supported by the Device.	
<ul> <li>Display all channel groups under the current Window Split setting.</li> <li>Add a channel group: Click Add, in the pop-up Add Group channel, select the channels to form a group, and then click Save.</li> <li>Delete a channel group: Select the check box of any channel group, and then click Delete.</li> <li>Edit a channel group: Select the check box of any channel group and then click Modify, or double-click on the group. The Modify Channel Group dialog box is displayed. You can regroup the channels.</li> <li>Click Move up or Move down to adjust the position of channel group.</li> </ul>	

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to save the settings.

On the top right of the live view screen, use the left mouse button or press Shift to

switch between <sup>O</sup> (image switching is allowed) and <sup>®</sup> (image switching is not allowed) to turn on/off the tour function.

• On the navigation bar, click Level to enable the tour and click Level to disable it.

### Adding a Channel Group

Step 1 Click Add.

The Add Group interface is displayed. See Figure 5-44.



Figure 5-44

<u>Step 2</u> Select the channels that you want to group for tour. See Figure 5-45.

If you want to select more than one channel, in the **Window Split** list, do not select **View 1**.



Figure 5-45



#### Modifying a Channel Group

Double-click on a channel group, the **Modify Channel Group** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-46.

You can modify channel group and click **OK** to complete the settings.



Figure 5-46

# 5.3 Entering Main Menu

Right-click on the live view screen, the shortcut menu is displayed, Click Main Menu and then login the system. The Main Menu is displayed, see Figure 5-47.



Figure 5-47

No. Icon Description	
----------------------	--

No.	lcon	Description		
1	Function tiles	<ul> <li>Includes eight function tiles: VIDEO, ALARM, IVS, POS, IoT, AI, BACKUP, DISPLAY, and AUDIO. Click each tile to open the configuration interface of the tile.</li> <li>VIDEO: Search for and play back the recorded video saved on the Device.</li> <li>ALARM: Search for alarm information and configure alarm event actions.</li> <li>IVS: Configure the behavior detections by drawing rules for detecting tripwire, intrusion, abandoned objects, and missing objects.</li> <li>POS: You can connect the Device to the POS (Point of Sale) machine and receive the information from it.</li> <li>FACE DETECT: Configure the human faces detection settings and search detected human faces.</li> <li>IoT: View, search and export the temperature and humidity data of camera, connect sensors and wireless siren, and configure the alarm event linkage settings.</li> <li>BACKUP: Search and back up the video files to the local PC or external storage device such as USB storage device.</li> <li>DISPLAY: Configure the display effect such as displaying content, image transparency, and resolution, and enable the zero-channel function.</li> <li>AUDIO: Manage audio files and configure the playing schedule. The audio file can be played in response to an alarm event if the voice prompts function is enabled.</li> </ul>		
2	Switch icon	indicates the current page of main menu. Click to switch to the next page.		
3	Configura tion menu	Includes six configurations through which you can configure camera settings, network settings, storage settings, system settings, account settings, and view information.		
4	Live	Click we to go to the live view screen.		
5	<b>.</b>	When you point to A the current user account is displayed.		
6		Click , select <b>Logout</b> , <b>Reboot</b> , or <b>Shutdown</b> according to your actual situation.		

No.	lcon	Description
7	PQ Dæ	<ul> <li>Displays Cell Phone Client and Device SN QR Code.</li> <li>Cell Phone Client: Use your mobile phone to scan the QR code to add the device into the Cell Phone Client, and then you can start accessing the Device from your cell phone.</li> <li>Device SN: Obtain the Device SN by scanning the QR code. Go to the P2P management platform and add the Device SN into the platform. Then you can access and manage the device in the WAN. For details, please refer to the P2P operation manual. You can also configure P2P function in the local configurations. See "5.1.4.5 Configuring P2P Settings."</li> </ul>

# 5.4 Controlling PTZ Cameras

PTZ is a mechanical platform that carries a camera and a protective cover and performs overall control remotely. A PTZ can move in both horizontal and vertical direction to provide all-around view to the camera.

Before operating PTZ, please assure the network connection between PTZ and the Device.

# 5.4.1 Configuring PTZ Connection Settings

You need to configure the PTZ connection settings before use.

- Local connection: RS485 Port for connecting Speed Dome or coaxial cable for connecting coaxial camera.
- Remote connection: local area network.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > CAMERA > PTZ.

The **PTZ** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-48.



Figure 5-48

010			parameters. See Table 5-19.
Ston 7	I 'ANTIAI IRA TNA CATTINAC	TOT THE PIZ CONNECTION	haramatere See Jahle 5-10

Parameter	Description
Channel	In the <b>Channel</b> list, select the channel that you want to connect the PTZ
Channel	camera to.
	Local: Connect through RS485 port or coaxial cable.
PTZ Type	Remote: Connect through network by adding IP address of PTZ
	camera to the Device.
	In the Control Mode list, select Serial or HDCVI. For HDCVI series
Control Mode	product, please select HDCVI. The control signal is sent to the PTZ
Control Mode	through the coaxial cable. For the serial mode, the control signal is sent to
	the PTZ through the RS485 port.
Protocol	In the <b>Protocol</b> list, select the protocol for the PTZ camera, for example,
FIOLOCOI	select HDCVI3.0.
	In the <b>Address</b> box, enter the address for PTZ camera. The default is 1.
	NOTE NOTE
Address	The entered address must be the same with the address configured on
	the PTZ camera; otherwise the PTZ camera cannot be controlled from
	the Device.
Baudrate	In the <b>Baudrate</b> list, select the baudrate for the PTZ camera. The default
Daudiate	is 9600.
Data Bits	The default is 8.
Stop Bits	The default is 1.
Parity	The default is NONE.

 Step 3
 Click Apply to save the settings.

 Image: NOTE
 NOTE

 Click Copy to copy the settings to other channels.

# 5.4.2 Working with PTZ Control Panel

PTZ control panel performs the operations such as directing camera in eight directions, adjusting zoom, focus and iris settings, and quick positioning.

## **Basic PTZ Control Panel**

Right-click on the live view screen and then select **PTZ**. The PTZ control panel is displayed. See Figure 5-49.





The functions with buttons in gray are not supported by the system.

Parameter	Description
Speed	Controls the movement speed. The bigger the value is, the faster the
Speed	movement will be.
Zoom	: Wide angle.
	E Long shot.
Focus	E: Zoom in.
	E Zoom out.
Iris	Small.
	+ : Large.
PTZ movement	Supports eight directions.
	Fast positioning button.
	• Positioning: Click to enter the fast positioning screen, and
	then click anywhere on the live view screen, the PTZ will turn to
	this point and move it to the middle of the screen.
	• Zooming: On the fast positioning screen, drag to draw a square on

Parameter	Description			
	the view. The square supports zooming.			
	$\diamond$ Dragging upward is to zoom out, and dragging downward is to			
	zoom in.			
	$\diamond$ The smaller the square, the larger the zoom effect.			
NOTE NOTE				
	Not all models support this function and can only be controlled through			
	mouse operations.			
•	Click , you can control the four directions (left, right, up, and down)			
	PTZ movement through mouse operation.			
	Click to open the expanded PTZ control panel.			
Table 5-20				

## Expanded PTZ Control Panel

On the basic PTZ control panel, click **I** to open the expanded PTZ control panel to find more

options. See Figure 5-50.



Figure 5-50

## 

- The functions with buttons in gray are not supported by the system.
- Right-click once to return to the interface of PTZ basic control panel.

lcon	Function	lcon	Function
	Preset	G	Auto Pan
9. 	Tour	<b>+</b>	Flip
~*	Pattern	Ů	Reset
	Autoscan	•	Click the <b>AUX Config</b> icon to open the PTZ functions settings interface.
Ŷ	AUX Switch	-	Click the Enter Menu icon to open the MENU OPERATION interface.

# 5.4.3 Configuring PTZ Functions

## 5.4.3.1 Configuring Presets

Step 1 On the Expanded PTZ Control Panel, click

The Preset interface is displayed. See Figure 5-51.



Figure 5-51

- <u>Step 2</u> Click the direction arrows to the required position.
- <u>Step 3</u> In the **Preset** box, enter the value to represent the required position.
- <u>Step 4</u> Click **Setting** to complete the preset settings.

## 5.4.3.2 Configuring Tours

Step 1 On the Expanded PTZ Control Panel, click

The **PTZ** interface is displayed.

Step 2 Click the **Tour** tab.

The **Tour** tab is displayed. See Figure 5-52.





<u>Step 3</u> In the **Patrol No**. box, enter the value for the tour route.

<u>Step 4</u> In the **Preset** box, enter the preset value.

Step 5 Click Add Preset.

A preset will be added for this tour.

- You can repeat adding more presets.
- Click **Del Preset** to delete the preset for this tour. This operation can be repeated to delete more presets. Some protocols do not support deleting.

## 5.4.3.3 Configuring Patterns

Step 1 On the Expanded PTZ Control Panel, click

The **PTZ** interface is displayed.

<u>Step 2</u> Click the **Pattern** tab.

Ihο	Pattorn	intertace	ie	dignlaver		Figure	5-53
THC	allern	menace	13	displayed	1. 000	riguic	J-JJ.

PTZ				
Preset	Tour	Pattern	Bo	order
,		Ρ	attern	1
4			Start	
	¥		End	l



- <u>Step 3</u> In the **Pattern** box, enter the value for pattern.
- <u>Step 4</u> Click **Start** to perform the directions operations. You can also go to the PTZ Control Panel to perform the operations of adjusting zoom, focus, iris, and directions.
- <u>Step 5</u> On the **PTZ** interface, click **End** to complete the settings.

## 5.4.3.4 Configuring AutoScan

Step 1 On the Expanded PTZ Control Panel, click

The **PTZ** interface is displayed.

<u>Step 2</u> Click the **Border** tab. The **Border** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-54.



Figure 5-54

<u>Step 3</u> Click the direction arrows to position the left and right borders.

## 5.4.4 Calling PTZ Functions

After you have configured the PTZ settings, you can call the PTZ functions for monitoring from the Expanded PTZ Control Panel. See Figure 5-55.





## 5.4.4.1 Calling Presets

- <u>Step 1</u> On the Expanded PTZ Control Panel, in the **No.** box, enter the value of the preset that you want to call.
- <u>Step 2</u> Click **I** to call the preset.
- Step 3 Click again to stop calling the preset.

### 5.4.4.2 Calling Tours

- <u>Step 1</u> On the Expanded PTZ Control Panel, in the **No.** box, enter the value of the tour that you want to call.
- Step 2 Click is to call the tour.
- Step 3 Click again to stop calling the tour.

## 5.4.4.3 Calling Patterns

- <u>Step 1</u> On the Expanded PTZ Control Panel, in the **No.** box, enter the value of the pattern that you want to call.
- Step 2 Call is to call the pattern.

The PTZ camera moves according to the configured pattern repeatedly.

Step 3 Click again to stop calling the pattern.

### 5.4.4.4 Calling AutoScan

- <u>Step 1</u> On the Expanded PTZ Control Panel, in the **No.** box, enter the value of the border that you want to call.
- Step 2 Click

The PTZ camera performs scanning according to the configured borders.

Step 3 Click again to stop auto canning.

### 5.4.4.5 Calling AutoPan

Step 1 On the Expanded PTZ Control Panel, click 2 to start moving in horizontal direction.

Step 2 Click again to stop moving.

### 5.4.4.6 Using AUX Button

On the Expanded PTZ Control Panel, click I the AUX setting interface is displayed. See

Figure 5-56.

- In the **Direct Aux** list, select the option that corresponds to the applied protocol.
- In the Aux Num box, enter the number that corresponds to the AUX switch on the decoder.

AUX			
Direct Aux			
NONE -	On	Off	
Aux Num			
1	On	Off	

Figure 5-56

## 5.4.5 Calling OSD Menu

For the coaxial camera, you can call the OSD menu through the Expanded PTZ Control Panel. See Figure 5-55.

Step 1 On the Expanded PTZ Control Panel, click

The MENU OPERATION interface is displayed. See Figure 5-57.



Figure 5-57

#### Step 2 Click Enter.

The OSD menu is displayed. See Figure 5-58.



Figure 5-58

- <u>Step 3</u> On the **MENU OPERATION** interface, click the arrow button to select the onscreen parameters.
- <u>Step 4</u> Click **Enter** to complete the settings.

# 5.5 Configuring Camera Settings

# 5.5.1 Configuring Image Settings

You can configure the image settings such as saturation, contrast, brightness, sharpness for each connected camera.

### Step 1 Select Main Menu > CAMERA > IMAGE.

The **IMAGE** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-59 for analog channel and Figure 5-60 for digital channel.



Figure 5-59



Figure 5-60

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the image parameters. See Table 5-22. On the digital channel interface, click **More Setting** to display more parameters.

Parameter	Description
Channel	In the <b>Channel</b> list, select the channel that you want to configure.
	In the <b>Cable Type</b> list, select the cable type that the camera uses.
Cable Type	
51	Not all models support this function.
	In the <b>Period</b> list, select a time period for the image settings. The
Period	image settings will be only used during the selected period.
	Enable the effective function.
Effective Time	In the <b>Effective Time</b> box, enter the start time and end time for the
	period you selected.
	Adjusts the color shades. The bigger the value, the lighter the color
	will become. This value does not influence the general image
Saturation	lightness.
	The value ranges from 0 to 100. The default value is 50. The
	recommended range is between 40 and 60.
	Adjusts the image contrast. The bigger the value is, the more obvious
	the contrast between the light area and dark area will become. You
	can adjust this value when the contrast is not obvious. However, if the
	value is too big, the dark area is likely to become darker and the light
Contrast	area over exposed. If the value is too small, the image is likely to
	become dim.
	The value ranges from 0 to 100. The default value is 50. The
	recommended range is between 40 and 60.
	Adjusts the image brightness. The bigger the value is, the brighter the
	image will become. You can adjust this value when the image as a
	whole looks dark or bright. However, the image is likely to become dim
Brightness	if the value is too big.
	The value ranges from 0 to 100. The default value is 50. The
	recommended range is between 40 and 60.
	Adjusts the hue of image. The value ranges from 0 to 100. The default
Hue	value is 50.
	Adjusts the sharpness of image edge. The bigger the value is, the
Sharpness	more obvious the image edge, and the noise is also greater.
	The value ranges from 1 to 15. The default value is 1.
	Adjusts the image definition. The bigger the value is, the clearer the
Image Enhance	image will become, but there will be more noises.
	Reduces the noises from image. The bigger the value is, the better
NR	the image will become.
	In the Config File list, select Day, Night, Normal, or Switch By
	<b>Period</b> . The system configures the parameters correspondingly.
	<ul> <li>Day: Apply the configuration during daytime.</li> </ul>
Config File	<ul> <li>Night: Apply the configuration during nighttime.</li> </ul>
-	<ul> <li>Normal: Apply the configuration during day and night.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Switch by Period: If you select this option, you need to configure</li> </ul>
	• Switch by Period. If you select this option, you need to confidure if

Parameter	Description
Mirror	Enable the function, the left and right side of the video image will be
Mirror	switched. It is disabled by default.
	This function specially applies to the image which frame rate is
3D Denoise	configured as 2 at least. It reduces the noises by making use of the
3D Denoise	information between two frames. The bigger the value is, the better
	the effect.
Flip	In the <b>Flip</b> list, you can select <b>180°</b> to change the video image display.
l lib	By default, the setting is <b>No Flip</b> .
Light	In the Light list, select Close or Enable to use the backlight
Light	compensation or not.
	Configure the white balance to adjust the general hue of the image.
	The default setting is <b>Auto</b> .
	Auto: Automatically apply white balance to different colors to
Scene Mode	make the image color display normally.
	<ul> <li>Sunny: Apply the threshold value to sunny environment.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Night: Apply the threshold value to night.</li> </ul>
	• Customized: Manually adjust the Red Gain and Blue Gain values.
	Configure the color and black&white mode of the image. This setting
	is not affected by the configuration files. The default setting is <b>Auto</b> .
	Color: The camera outputs color image only.
	• Auto: Depends on the camera, such as overall brightness and
Day & Night	whether there is an IR light, either color image or black&white
	image is output.
	B/W: The camera outputs Black and white image only.
	By Time: The camera outputs image according to the configure
	the sunrise time and sunset time.

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

# 5.5.2 Configuring Encode Settings

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > CAMERA > ENCODE > Encode.

The **Encode** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-61.

IMAGE	Encode Sna	apshot			
ENCODE	Channel	1 -			
OVERLAY	Main Stream		Sub Stream		
PTZ	Smart Codec		Video		
CHANNEL TYPE	Туре	Regular 🔻	Туре	Sub Stream1 🔹	
REGISTRATION	Compression	H.265	Compression	H.265	
COAXIAL UPGRADE	Resolution	1920x1080(1080P)	Resolution	352*240(CIF) -	
	Frame Rate(FPS)	15 🔹	Frame Rate(FPS)	15 👻	
	Bit Rate Type	CBR	Bit Rate Type	CBR 👻	
	I Frame Interval	1S -	l Frame Interval	1 S -	
	Bit Rate(Kb/S)	2048 -	Bit Rate(Kb/S)	640 -	
		More Setting		More Setting	
	Default Copy			Apply E	lack

Figure 5-61

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the main/sub streams parameters. See Table 5-23.

Parameter	Description		
Channel	In the Channel list, select the channel that you want to configure the		
Channel	settings for.		
	Enable the smart codec function. This function can reduce the video		
Smart Codec	bit stream for non-important recorded video to maximize the storage		
	space.		
	• Main Stream: In the <b>Type</b> list, select <b>General</b> , <b>MD</b> (Motion		
Туре	Detect), or <b>Alarm</b> .		
	• Sub Stream: This setting is not configurable.		
	In the <b>Compression</b> list, select the encode mode.		
	H.265: Main profile encoding.		
	H.264H: High profile encoding. Low bit stream with high		
Compression	definition. This setting is recommended.		
	H.264: General profile encoding.		
	• H.264B: Baseline profile encoding. This setting requires higher bit		
	stream compared with other settings for the same definition.		
	In the Resolution list, select resolution for the video.		
Resolution	The maximum video resolution might be different dependent on your		
	device model.		

Parameter	Description			
	Configure the frames per second for the video. The higher the value,			
	the clearer and smoother the image will become. Frame rate changes			
Frame Rate	along with the resolution.			
	Generally, in PAL format, you can select the value from 1 through 25;			
(FPS)	in NTSC format, you can select the value from 1 through 30. However,			
	the specific range of frame rate that you can select depends on the			
	capability of the Device.			
Quality	This function is available if you select <b>VBR</b> in the <b>Bit Rate</b> List.			
Quality	The higher the value, the better the image will become.			
I Frame Interval	The interval between two reference frames.			
	In the <b>Bit Rate</b> list, select a value or enter a customized value to			
Bit Rate (Kb/S)	change the image quality. The bigger the value is, the better the			
	image will become.			
Video	Enable the function for sub stream.			
	Click More Setting, the More Setting interface is displayed.			
Audio Encode	Audio Encode: This function is enabled by default for main			
	stream. You need to manually enable it for sub stream 1. Once			
	this function is enabled, the recorded video file is composite			
	audio and video stream.			
Audio Source	Audio Source: In the Audio Source list, you can select LOCAL			
	and <b>HDCVI</b> .			
	$\diamond$ LOCAL: The audio signal is input from Audio input port.			
	$\diamond$ HDCVI: The audio signal is input from HDCVI camera.			
Audio Format	• Audio Format: In the Audio Format list, select a format that you			
	need.			

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

Click **Copy** to copy the settings to other channels.

# 5.5.3 Configuring Snapshot Settings

### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > CAMERA > ENCODE > Snapshot.

The **Snapshot** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-62.

CAMERA			- 00 
IMAGE	Encode	Snapshot	
ENCODE	Manual Snap	1 • /Time	
OVERLAY			
PTZ	Channel	1 •	
CHANNEL TYPE	Mode	General 👻	
REGISTRATION	Image Size	352*288(CIF) =	
COAXIAL UPGRADE	Image Quality	4 *	
	Interval	1 Second v	
	Default	Copy Apply Back	٢

Figure 5-62

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the snapshot parameters. See Table 5-24.

Parameter	Description	
Manual Snap	In the Manual Snap list, select how many snapshots you want to take	
Manual Shap	each time.	
Channel	In the <b>Channel</b> list, select the channel that you want to configure the	
Channel	settings for.	
Mode	In the Mode list, you can select Human Face, Event, or General as	
Mode	the event type for which you want to take a snapshot.	
Image Size	In the <b>Image Size</b> list, select a value for the image.	
	Configures the image quality by 6 levels. The higher the level, the	
Image Quality	better the image will become.	
Interval Configures or customizes the snapshot frequency.		

Table 5-24

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

Click Copy to copy the settings to other channels.

# 5.5.4 Configuring Overlay Settings

You can configure to display system time and channel name on each channel window in the live view screen.

Step 1 Select Main Menu > CAMERA > OVERLAY > Overlay.

The **Overlay** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-63.



Figure 5-63

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the text overlay parameters. See Table 5-25.

Parameter	Description			
Channel	In the Channel list, select the channel that you want to configure the			
Channel	settings for.			
	Select the Time Display check box to display the system time on			
Time Display	each channel window in the live view screen.			
	In the <b>Time Display</b> list, select time display style.			
	Select the Channel Title check box to display the channel name on			
Channel Title	each channel window in the live view screen.			
	In the <b>Channel Title</b> box, enter the name for the selected channel.			

Table 5-25

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

Click **Copy** to copy the settings to other channels.

# 5.5.5 Configuring Covered Area Settings

### Step 1 Select Main Menu > CAMERA > OVERLAY > Cover-Area.

The Cover-Area interface is displayed. See Figure 5-64.



Figure 5-64

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the covered area parameters. See Table 5-26.

Parameter	Description
Channel	In the Channel list, select the channel that you want to configure the
Channel	settings for.
	• Preview: Select the <b>Preview</b> check box to apply the configured
Preview	covered block to the selected channel window in the live view
Fleview	screen.
	• Record: Select the <b>Record</b> check box to apply the configured
	covered block to the selected channel window during recording.
	To configure covering block, do the following:
	1. Select the <b>Preview</b> check box or the <b>Record</b> check box, or select
Decord	the both. The "1, 2, 3, 4" buttons are activated.
Record	2. Click the buttons to select blocks.
	3. A triangle solid black block is displayed. You can drag the block to
	the area that you want to cover and adjust the size of the block.
	4. You can configure total 4 covered blocks.

Table 5-26

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

# 5.5.6 Configuring Channel Type

You can configure the channel type as **Analog** or **IP** channel. <u>Step 1</u> Select **Main Menu > CAMERA > CHANNEL TYPE**.

			•	•	-			
CAMERA							LIVE	💄 🕞 🗸 🛤
IMAGE		Analog						7
ENCODE	Channel	AUTO	CVI	AHD	CVBS	OTHER	IP 🗌	
	1							
OVERLAY	2	<b>Y</b>						-
PTZ	4	$\checkmark$						
> CHANNEL TYPE	5 6	<b>Y</b>						_
REGISTRATION	7							-
	8	$\checkmark$						
COAXIAL UPGRADE	9 10							-
	11						KKKKK	-
	12							
	13 14							-
	15							-
	16							
	17 - 24 *Tipe:Disab	le one analog	channel you	an add one IE	Channel ID (	channel setup s		
	from the las		channer, you				iaii begiri	
							Apply	Back
								Buok

### The CHANNEL TYPE interface is displayed. See Figure 5-65.



<u>Step 2</u> Configure the channels.

- Analog Channel: Select the transmission medium such as CVI, CVBS, and then follow the onscreen instructions to complete the settings.
- IP Channel: Select a channel for IP camera from the last channel number, for example, in Figure 5-65, select from the **17–24** check box. Then follow the onscreen instructions to complete the settings.

### 

- The 17–24 channels are only for IP camera and the range changes dependent on the model you purchased.
- The channel selection for analog camera or IP camera are in sequence, for example, if you want to select channels for IP camera, you need to select the 17–24 check box first, and then you cannot jump to select the channel 15 directly until you have selected the channel 16.

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** and follow the onscreen instructions to complete the settings.

# 5.5.7 Upgrading Coaxial Camera

#### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > CAMERA > COAXIAL UPGRADE. The COAXIAL UPGRADE interface is displayed. See Figure 5-66.

	CAMERA				
	IMAGE	Update File			Browse
	ENCODE				Biowse
	OVERLAY	Device(0/2)			
	PTZ	Channel	Process	System Version	Manufacturer
	CHANNEL TYPE			V1.000.0003.1.R.201	Dahua
	REGISTRATION			V1.000.0002.3.R.201	Dahua
>	COAXIAL UPGRADE				
Í	COANIAL UPGRADE				
					Start Upgrade

Figure 5-66

Step 2 Click Browse.

The Browse interface is displayed.

<u>Step 3</u> Select the upgrade file and click **OK**.

The COAXIAL UPGRADE interface is displayed.

You need to insert the USB storage device that contains the upgrading files.

<u>Step 4</u> Select the check box of the channel that you want to upgrade.

### Step 5 Click Start Upgrade.

If the upgrading is successful, the system pops up a message indicating the upgrading is completed. If the upgrading is failed, please check if the Device

# 5.6 Configuring Remote Devices

## 5.6.1 Adding Remote Devices

## 

This function is available after you have configured the channel type as IP channel as described in previous section, see "5.5.6 Configuring Channel Type."

You can add remote devices by adding the IP address.

Select **Main Menu > CAMERA > REGISTRATION > Registration**, the **Registration** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-67.

CAMERA						
IMAGE	Registration	Status	Firmware	Upgrade		
ENCODE	Uninitialized	Initia	lize	Show Filter	IPC	C -
OVERLAY PTZ CHANNEL TYPE		Edit Prev				anu
> REGISTRATION						
COAXIAL UPGRADE	Added Device          Channel	III Edit	Delete	Status	Add Manual A	Add
		III Residue bandwi	idth/Total bandwidth:	49.50Mbps/49	Import Export	•

Figure 5-67

Parameter	Description
Uninitialized	Enable the Uninitialized function, the uninitialized devices out of the
Uninitialized	searched devices are displayed in the searched device list.
Initialize	Select the uninitialized device from the uninitialized device list, and
	the click <b>Initialize</b> to start initializing device.
	In the <b>Show Filter</b> list, select the remote device type that you want to
	display in the searched device list.
	None: Display all types of devices.
Show Filter	IPC: Display the front-end devices.
	• DVR: Display all storage devices such as NVR, DVR and HCVR.
	OTHER: Display the devices that do not belong to IPC or DVR
	type.
Searched Device	Displays the searched devices. You can view the device information
List	such as status, IP address.
	Click <b>Device Search</b> , the searched devices display in the searched
	device list.
	To adjust the display sequence, in the title line, you can click the IP
Device Search	address, Manufacturer, Type, MAC Address, Port, or Device Name
Device Search	text. For example, click the IP address text, the sequence icon
	IP Address is displayed.
	NOTE NOTE
	"*" is displayed next to the added device.
Add	In the Searched Device List area, select the device that you want to
Aud	add.

Parameter	Description
	Add the device by manually configuring settings such as IP address,
Manual Add	channel selection. For details, see "5.6.1.4 Adding Remote Devices
	Manually."
Added Device	Displays the added devices. You can edit and delete the device, and
List	view the device information.
Delete	Select the check box of the added device, and then click <b>Delete</b> to
Delete	delete the added device.
Import	Select the searched devices and then click Import to import the
Import	devices in batches.
Export	Select the added devices and then click <b>Export</b> . The exported
Export	devices information is saved into the USB storage device.

## 5.6.1.2 Initializing Remote Devices

You can reset the password and IP address of the remote devices through initializing. <u>Step 1</u> Click **Device Search**.

CAMERA						LIVE	:   🚨 🕞 - 🗄
IMAGE	Registration	Status	Firm	vare	Upgrade		
ENCODE	Uninitialized		Initialize		Show Filter		IPC -
OVERLAY	50		Preview	Status		PAddress	c Mar <b>-</b>
PTZ	1	<i>i</i>	LIVE	✓		92. <b>1</b> 68. <b>1</b> .19	=
CHANNEL TYPE						92.168.1.31	
						92.168.1. <b>1</b> 23	
REGISTRATION						92.168.1.131	
COAXIAL UPGRADE						92.168.1.151	
		✓	LIVE		1	92.168.1.154	<b>▼</b>
	Device Search Added Device					Add	Manual Add
	Channe	el Eo	dit	Delete	Status	IP Add	ress
		Residue ba	andwidth/Total t	oandwidth: 4	9.50Mbps/49	Import	Export

The searched devices are displayed in the table. See Figure 5-68.

Figure 5-68

<u>Step 2</u> Enable the Initialized function.

The uninitialized devices are displayed. See Figure 5-69.

CAMERA					LIVE	
IMAGE	Registration	Status	Firmware	Upgrade		
ENCODE	Uninitialized	<b>Initia</b>	alize	Show Filter		IPC -
OVERLAY	1	Edit Prev			Address 🔺	Manu
PTZ					168.1.108	Da
CHANNEL TYPE						
REGISTRATION						
COAXIAL UPGRADE						
	Device Searc	n			Add M	anual Add
	Added Device					
	Channe	l Edit	Delete	Status	IP Address	
		Residue bandwi	dth/Total bandwidth:	: 61.50Mbps/61	Import	Export

Figure 5-69

- <u>Step 3</u> Select the uninitialized device that you want to initialize.
- Step 4 Click Initialize.

The Enter Password interface is displayed. See Figure 5-70

Enter Passwor	u	
	✓ Using current device password and email info.	
		Next

Figure 5-70

<u>Step 5</u> Configure the password and email information.

If you select the **Using current device password and email info** check box, the remote device automatically uses the current password and email information, so you do not need to set the password and email address again and can go to Step 6.

 Clear the Using current device password and email info check box. The password setting interface is displayed. See Figure 5-71.

Enter Passwor	rd	
	Using current de	vice password and email info.
	User	admin
	Password	
		Use a password that has 8 to 32 characters, it can be a combination of letter(s), number(s) and symbol(s) with at least two kinds of them.(please do not use special symbols like '";: 8)
	Confirm Password	
		Next

Figure 5-71

2) Configure the settings for the password setting parameters. See Table 5-28.

Parameter	Description	
User	The default is admin.	
Password	The new password can be set from 8 characters through 32	
	characters and contains at least two types from number, letter and	
Confirm Password	special characters (excluding"", """, ";", ":" and "&").	
	Please enter a strong password according to the password strength	
	bar indication.	

Table 5-28

### 3) Click Next.

#### The **Password Protection** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-72.

Password Protection				
Email Address	To reset password, please inp	ut properly or update in tin		
Back			Next	Skip

Figure 5-72

4) Select the **Email Address** box and enter the email address that you want to reserve for password reset in the future.

```
If you do not want to set the reserved email address, click Skip.
```

Step 6 Click Next.

The **NETWORK** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-73.

NETWORK			
Checked Device No.: 1			
STATIC			
IP Address	192 . 168 . 1 . 108	Incremental Value	1
Subnet Mask	255 _ 255 _ 255 _ 0		
Default Gateway	192 . 168 . 1 . 1		
1 IP Address			
1 192.168.1.10			
Back		Next Skip	

Figure 5-73

- <u>Step 7</u> Configure the IP address.
  - Select the **DHCP** check box, you do not need to enter the IP address information, because the system will allocate one IP address to the remote device.
  - Select the **STATIC** check box, you need to enter the IP address, subnet mast, default gateway, and incremental value. The system will allocate the IP address to the remote devices by progressively increasing the last part of the IP address when initializing devices in batches.

When configuring IP address for multiple remote devices which were not in the same network segment, these remote devices will belong to the same network segment after configuration.

#### Step 8 Click Next.

The initializing is started. After the process is completed, see Figure 5-74.



Figure 5-74

<u>Step 9</u> Click **Finished** to complete the settings.

## 5.6.1.3 Adding Remote Devices Automatically

<u>Step 1</u> On the **Registration** interface, click **Device Search** The searched devices are displayed. See Figure 5-75.

	CAMERA						
IMAG	GE	Registration	Stati	us Firr	nware l	Upgrade	
ENC	ODE	Uninitialize	ad 🗖	Initialize	Sho	w Filter	IPC -
OVE	RLAY						
PTZ		50	Edit	Preview	Status	IP Address	
PIZ						192.168.1.1	
CHA	NNEL TYPE		ľ			192.168.1.3	
> REG	ISTRATION		ľ			192.168.1.1 192.168.1.1	
000			ľ			192.168.1.	
COA	XIAL UPGRADE		ĩ			192.168.1.	
						152.100.1.	•
		Device Sea	arch			Ad	ld Manual Add
		Added Dev	ice				
		Cha	nnel	Edit	Delete	Status	IP Address
		Delete	Residu	ie bandwidth/Tota	l bandwidth: 49.5	0Mbps/49 Imp	oort Export

Figure 5-75

<u>Step 2</u> Select the check box of the device.

Step 3 Click Add.

The device is added into the **Added Device** area.

- You can also double-click the device to add it into the Added Device area.
- You can add devices in batches.

## 5.6.1.4 Adding Remote Devices Manually

### Step 1 On the Registration interface, click Manual Add.

The Manual Add interface is displayed. See Figure 5-76.

Manual Add	
Channel	10 🔹
Manufacturer	Onvif 🔹
IP Address	192.168.0.0
RTSP Port	554
HTTP Port	80
User Name	admin
Password	•••••
Remote Channel	1
Decoder Buffer	Default
● Auto ○ TCP ○	
	Apply Back

Figure 5-76

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the manual adding device parameters. See Table 5-29.

Parameter	Description
Channel	In the Channel list, select the channel that you want use on the
	Device to connect the remote device.
Manufacture	In the Manufacturer list, select the manufacturer of the remote
Manufacturer	device.
	In the IP Address box, enter the IP address of remote device.
IP Address	NOTE NOTE
	The default is 192.168.0.0 which the system cannot connect to.
RTSP Port	The default value setting is 554. You can enter the value according to
RISPFOIL	your actual situation.
	The default value setting is 80. You can enter the value according to
HTTP Port	your actual situation.
	If you enter other value, for example, 70, and then you should enter
	70 after the IP address when logging in the Device by browser.
User Name	Enter the user name of the remote device.
Password	Enter the password of the user for the remote device

Parameter	Description
Demote Channel	Enter the remote channel number of the remote device that you want
Remote Channel	to add.
Decoder Buffer	In the Decoder Buffer list, select Default, Realtime, or Fluent.
Protocol Type	Select Auto, TCP, UDP, or MULTICAST. The default is TCP.

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to save the settings.

DOTE NOTE

- Only one device can be added manually at one time.
- Indicates successful connection and I indicates connection failed.

## 5.6.1.5 Modifying or Deleting Remote Devices

You can modify and delete the added devices.

- To modify the remote devices, do the following:
- Step 1 Click or double-click a device.

The Edit interface is displayed. See Figure 5-77.

Edit	
Channel	10 🔹
Manufacturer	Onvif 🔹
IP Address	192.168.1.123
RTSP Port	554
HTTP Port	80
User Name	admin
Password	•••••
Remote Channel	1
Decoder Buffer	Default 🔹
● Auto ○ TCP ○	UDP 🔿 MULTICAST
Сору	OK Back

Figure 5-77

<u>Step 2</u> In the **Channel** list, select the channel that you want to modify settings for. <u>Step 3</u> Click **OK** to save the settings.

Click Copy to copy the user name and password to other channels.

- To delete one or more added devices, do the following:
  - ♦ Click to delete one device
  - Select the check box of the devices that you want to delete, and then click **Delete**.
## 5.6.1.6 Modifying IP Address

You can modify a single IP address or multiple IP addresses of remote devices at the one time.

• To modify a single IP address, do the following:

Step 1 In the Searched Device list area, click for the device that you want to modify IP.

Modify IP	
IP Address	192 . 168 . 3 . 133
Subnet Mask	255 . 255 . 0 . 0
Default Gateway	192 .168 . 0 . 1
User Name	admin
Password	
Add	
	OK Back

The **Modify IP** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-78.

Figure 5-78

- <u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for IP address, subnet mask, default gateway, user name, and password.
- Step 3 Enable the Add function to add the device into the Added Device area.
- Step 4 Click **OK** to save the settings.
- To modify IP address in batches, do the following:
- <u>Step 1</u> In the Searched Device list area, select the devices that you want to modify IP address in batches.
- Step 2 Click

The **Modify IP** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-79.

Modify IP	
Batch Modify	
Start Address	192 . 168 . 3 . 133
Subnet Mask	255 . 255 . 0 . 0
Default Gateway	192 .168 . 0 . 1
User Name	admin
Password	
Add	
	ок Back

Figure 5-79

Step 3 Enable the Batch Modify function.

- <u>Step 4</u> Configure the settings for start IP address (the IP address is allocated in sequence), subnet mask, default gateway, user name, and password.
- <u>Step 5</u> Enable the **Add** function to add the devices into the **Added Device** area.
- Step 6 Click Apply to save the settings.

### 5.6.1.7 Exporting IP Address

You can export the added IP address to the USB storage device.

#### III NOTE

The exported information is saved in .csv file, which includes IP address, port number, channel number, manufacturer, user name, and password.

- <u>Step 1</u> Insert the USB storage device to the USB port of the Device.
- Step 2 Click Export.

The <b>Browse</b> interfa	ce is displayed. See	Figure 5-80.		
Browse				
Device Name	sda5(USB DISK)	Refresh	Format	
Total Space	15.60 GB			
Free Space	15.60 GB			
Address	1			
Name		Size	Туре	Delete
E IP			Folder	<b>茴</b>
New Folder			ОК	Back
	Figure	5-80		

- \_\_\_\_\_
- <u>Step 3</u> Configure the save path.
- <u>Step 4</u> Click **OK** to save the settings.

A pop-up message indicating "Successfully exported" is displayed.

Step 5 Click OK.

## 5.6.1.8 Importing IP Address

You can add remote devices by importing IP address information.

- <u>Step 1</u> Insert the USB storage device to the USB port of the Device.
- Step 2 Click Import.

The **Browse** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-81.

Browse				
Device Name	sda5(USB DISK)	▼ Refresh		
Total Space	15.60 GB			
Free Space	15.60 GB			
Address	1			
Name		Size	Туре	Delete
D IP			Folder	ش.
RemoteCo	onfig_20171103141044.csv	464 B	File	ش –
Config File				
			ОК	Back

Figure 5-81

Step 3 Select the file that you want to import.

<u>Step 4</u> Click **OK** to start importing.

After importing is completed, a pop-up message indicating "The import succeeded" is displayed.

If the IP address that you want to import already exists in the Device, the system will pop up a message to ask you whether to overwrite the existing content.

- Click **OK** to replace the existing one.
- Click **Cancel** to add it as a separate device in the **Added Device** area.

# 

- You can edit the exported .csv file and be cautious not to change the file format; otherwise the file cannot be imported as it will be judged as invalid.
- The language of .csv file must match the Device language.
- The import and export through customized protocol is not supported.

# 5.6.2 Managing Remote Devices

You can view the status of remote devices and upgrade.

## 5.6.2.1 Viewing Status

You can view the device information such as connection status, IP address, motion detection, video loss detection, camera name, and manufacturer.

Select **Main Menu > CAMERA > REGISTRATION > Status**, the **Status** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-82.

						ſ	LIVE 💄 🗗 🗸	<b>B</b> Q
	IMAGE	Registration	Status	Firmware	Upgrade			
	ENCODE	Device Sta	tus					
	OVERLAY	Chann	el Status	IP Address	MD	Video Loss	Tampering	
	PTZ	11		192.168.1.123				
	CHANNEL TYPE							
>	REGISTRATION							
	COAXIAL UPGRADE							
		Refresh						

Figure 5-82

## 5.6.2.2 Viewing Firmware Information

You can view the device firmware information such as channel number, IP address, manufacturer, system version, video input, audio input, and alarm in.

Select **Main Menu > CAMERA > REGISTRATION > Firmware**, the **Firmware** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-83.

IMAGE       Registration       Status       Firmware       Upgrade         ENCODE       OVERLAY       IP Address       Manufacturer       Type       System Version       No.       Vi         PTZ       CHANNEL TYPE       SD-E56       2.460.0001       2L01505YA         PTZ       CHANNEL TYPE       SD-E56       2.460.0001       2L01505YA         OCAXIAL UPGRADE       III       INCODE       III       INCODE       IIII       IIII       IIII       IIII       IIII       IIII       IIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIII	CAMERA										LIV	Έ	<u>.</u>	🗕 🚽 🔛
OVERLAY 11 192.168.3.136 SD-E56 2.460.0001 2L01505YA   PTZ   CHANNEL TYPE   > REGISTRATION   COAXIAL UPGRADE	IMAGE	egistration		Status		Firmware	U	pgrad	е					
OVERLAY       11       192.168.3.136       SD-E56       2.460.0001       2L01505YA         PTZ       CHANNEL TYPE	ENCODE	Channel	IF	P Address	Man	ufacturer	Туре	Sys	stem V	ersion	١	lo.		Vi
CHANNEL TYPE  COAXIAL UPGRADE   I II  I II	OVERLAY													
REGISTRATION COAXIAL UPGRADE	PTZ													
	CHANNEL TYPE													
	REGISTRATION													
	COAXIAL UPGRADE													
Refresh		•												
		Refresh												

Figure 5-83

# 5.6.2.3 Upgrading Remote Devices

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > CAMERA > REGISTRATION > Upgrade. The Upgrade interface is displayed. See Figure 5-84.

						LIVE	L
	IMAGE	Registration	Status	Firmware	Upgrade		
	ENCODE	Device Upgra	de(0/1)				
	OVERLAY	Channel	Status IP Addr	ess System Version	Process	Upgrade	Port
	PTZ	11	• 192.168	.1.123	To be upgraded	Detect	37777
	CHANNEL TYPE						
>	REGISTRATION						
	COAXIAL UPGRADE						
					Hanna da Manual		the second s
				File	Upgrade Manual	Check Online	Upgrade

Figure 5-84

Step 2 Upgrade the device.

- File Upgrade
- 1) Insert a USB storage device containing the upgrade files into the USB port of the Device.
- 2) Select the devices that you want to upgrade.
- 3) Click File upgrade.

The File Upgrade interface is displayed.

- 4) Select the upgrading files and click **Apply**.
- Online Upgrade
- Click **Detect** or select the check box the device that you want to upgrade and click Manual Check.

The system starts detecting if there is a new version on the online server.

- 2) Select the check box of all the devices that have new version.
- 3) Click Online Upgrade.

- The system will pop up a message to indicate if the upgrading is successful.
- You can use the Type list to filter the devices so that you can find the devices quickly.

# 5.7 Configuring Record Settings

You can record video manually or automatically and configure the recording settings to main stream and sub stream respectively.

# 5.7.1 Enabling Record Control



- Manual recording operation requires the user have the permission to access STORAGE settings.
- Check to ensure the HDD installed in the Device has been formatted properly.

To enter the record control interface, do the following:

<u>Step 1</u> Right-click on the live view screen, the shortcut menu is displayed. On the shortcut menu, select **Manual > Record Control**. The **RECORD** interface is displayed, see Figure 5-85.

RECORD																	
Main Stream	All	2	3	4	5	7	8	10	11	12	13	14	15	16			
Auto																	
Manual																	
Stop																	
Sub Stream																	
Auto																	
Manual																	
Stop																	
Snapshot																	
Enable																	
Disable																	
													Арр	oly	E	Back	

Figure 5-85

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the record control parameters. See Table 5-30.

Parameter	Description									
Channel	Displays all the analog channels and the connected digital channels.									
Channel	You can select a single channel or select All.									
	Auto: Automatically record according to the record type and									
	recording time as configured in the recording schedule.									
Record status	• Manual: Keep general recording for 24 hours for the selected									
	channel.									
	• Stop: Do not record.									
Snapshot status	Enable or disable the scheduled snapshot for the corresponding									
Shapshot status	channels.									

Table 5-30

Step 3 Click Apply.

# 5.7.2 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule

You need to configure the storage schedule for the recorded video so that the recorded video can be saved. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule."

# 5.8 Configuring Snapshot Settings

# 5.8.1 Configuring Snapshot Trigger

The snapshot is divided into scheduled snapshot, event triggered snapshot, and face detection triggered snapshot. When the both are enabled, the event triggered snapshot has the priority.

- If there is no alarm event, the system performs scheduled snapshot.
- If there is any alarm event, the system performs event triggered snapshot.

### 5.8.1.1 Configuring Scheduled Snapshot

- <u>Step 1</u> Right-click on the live view screen, the shortcut menu is displayed.
- <u>Step 2</u> On the shortcut menu, select **Manual > Record Control**.

The **RECORD** interface is displayed.

<u>Step 3</u> In the **Snapshot** area, enable the snapshot for the channels if needed. See Figure 5-86.

RECORD				_	_		_	_	_		_		_			_	_	_		_	
Main Stream	All		2	3	4	5		7	8		10	11	12	13	14	15	16				
Auto																					
Manual																					
Stop																					
Sub Stream																					
Auto																					
Manual																					
Stop																					
Snapshot																					
Enable	0	Ó	0	Ô	Ő	0	Ő	0	0	0	Ó	Ő	Ó	0	0	0	Ô	1			
Disable	0	۲		۲					۲	۲	۲		۲				۲				
																		- 66			
																Арр	oly		Back		

Figure 5-86

#### <u>Step 4</u> Select Main Menu > CAMERA > ENCODE > Snapshot.

The **Snapshot** interface is displayed.

<u>Step 5</u> In the **Mode** list, select **General**, and then configure other parameters. See Figure 5-87.

	CAMERA			
	IMAGE	Encode	inapshot	
>	ENCODE	Manual Snap	1 • /Time	
	OVERLAY			
	PTZ	Channel	1 •	
	CHANNEL TYPE	Mode	General	
	REGISTRATION	Image Size	352*288(CIF)	
	COAXIAL UPGRADE	Image Quality	4 •	
		Interval	1 SPL v	
		Default	Сору	Apply Cancel

Figure 5-87

<u>Step 6</u> Click **Apply** to save the settings.

- If you have configured the snapshot schedule, the configuration has been completed.
- If you have not configured the snapshot schedule, see "5.1.4.10 Configuring Snapshot Storage Schedule."

## 5.8.1.2 Configuring Event Triggered Snapshot

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > CAMERA > ENCODE > Snapshot. The Snapshot interface is displayed.

<u>Step 2</u> In the **Mode** list, select **Event**, and then configure other parameters. See Figure 5-88.



Figure 5-88

<u>Step 3</u> Select **Main Menu > ALARM > VIDEO DETECT**, and select the event type to configure, for example, select the **Motion Detect** tab. See Figure 5-89.

🔔 ALARM						VE	L 🕞 🗸 🛱
	Motion Detect	Video Loss 7	ampering	Diagnosis			
	Motion Detect		ampening	Diagnosis			
ALARM INPUT	Channel	1		Region	Setting		
ALARM OUTPUT	Enable MD			Enable PIR			
> VIDEO DETECT						~	
ABNORMALITY	Period	Setting		Anti-Dither		Sec.	
	Alarm Out	Setting		Latch	10	Sec.	
	Show Message		d 	Send Email			
	Record Channe						
	PTZ	Setting		Post Record	10	Sec.	
	Tour	1234	4 5 6 7 8	9 10 11 12 1	3 14 15 16		
	🗹 Snapshot				3 14 15 16		
	Video Matrix	Buzzer		Log			
	Voice Prompts	None					
	Default	Copy Test			Apply		Back
		Eiguro 5 90					

Figure 5-89

<u>Step 4</u> Select the **Snapshot** check box and select the corresponding channel. <u>Step 5</u> Click **Apply**.

## 5.8.1.3 Configuring Face Detection Triggered Snapshot

### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > CAMERA > ENCODE > Snapshot. The Snapshot interface is displayed.

<u>Step 2</u> In the **Mode** list, select **Human Face**, and then configure other parameters. See Figure 5-90.

	IMAGE	Encode Snar	oshot		
>	ENCODE	Manual Snap	1 -	/Time	
	OVERLAY				
	PTZ	Channel	1		
	CHANNEL TYPE	Mode	Human Face		
	REGISTRATION	Image Size	1280*720(720P)		
	COAXIAL UPGRADE				
		Default			Apply Cancel

Figure 5-90

<u>Step 3</u> Select Main Menu > FACE DETECT > PARAMETERS > Human Face. The Human Face interface is displayed. See Figure 5-91.

🚊 FACE DETECT				LIVE	💄 🕞 🗸 🔛
SMART SEARCH	Human Face				
> PARAMETERS	Channel Enable	1	▼ Target Filter	Setting	
	Period Alarm Out Send Email	Setting Setting	Latch	10 Sec.	
	✓ Record Channel PTZ	1 2 3 4 5 6 Setting	Post Record	13 14 15 16 10 Sec.	
	Snapshot	123456 ✓ Log		13 14 15 16	
	☐ Voice Prompts	None			
	Default			Apply	Back

Figure 5-91

<u>Step 4</u> Select the **Snapshot** check box and select the corresponding channel. <u>Step 5</u> Click **Apply**.

# 5.8.2 Configuring Snapshot Storage Schedule

You need to configure the storage schedule for the snapshot so that the snapshot can be saved. For details, see "5.1.4.10 Configuring Snapshot Storage Schedule."

## 5.8.3 Backing up Snapshots to FTP

#### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > STORAGE > FTP.

	1 3	0				
STORAGE					LIVE 🛛 💄 🕒 .	
BASIC	Enable					
SCHEDULE						
HDD MANAGER	Host IP	0.0.0.0				
ADVANCE	Port	21				
QUOTA	Anonymity					
HDD DETECT	User Name					
REC ESTIMATE	Password					
FTP	Remote Directory					
	File Length(M)	0				
	Image Upload Interval(Sec.)	2				
	Channel	1 *				
	Week Day	Wed 🔻	Alarm	Intel	MD General	
	Period 1	00:00 - 24:00				
	Period 2	00:00 - 24:00				
	Default Test				Apply Back	

The **FTP** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-92.

Figure 5-92

<u>Step 2</u> Enable the FTP function and configure the parameters. For details, see "5.17.8 Configuring FTP Storage Settings."

The snapshots will be uploaded to FTP for backup.

# 5.9 Playing Back Video

# 5.9.1 Enabling Record Control



- Manual recording operation requires the user have the permission to access STORAGE settings.
- Check to ensure the HDD installed in the Device has been formatted properly.

To enter the record control interface, do the following:

<u>Step 1</u> Right-click on the live view screen, the shortcut menu is displayed. On the shortcut menu, select **Manual > Record Control**. The **RECORD** interface is displayed, see Figure 5-93.



Figure 5-93

Stop 2	Configure the	oottingo f	or the record	oontrol	noromotoro	Sec. 0
<u>Step z</u>	Configure the	seungs n		CONTINU	parameters.	See 0.

Parameter	Description				
Channel	Displays all the analog channels and the connected digital channels.				
Channel	You can select a single channel or select All.				
Record status	<ul> <li>Auto: Automatically record according to the record type and recording time as configured in the recording schedule.</li> <li>Manual: Keep general recording for 24 hours for the selected channel.</li> <li>Stop: Do not record.</li> </ul>				
Snapshot status	Enable or disable the scheduled snapshot for the corresponding channels.				

# 5.9.2 Instant Playback

You can use the instant playback function to play back the previous five minutes to sixty minutes of the recorded video in any channel. For details about instant playback function, see "5.2.2.1 Instant Playback."

# 5.9.3 Main Interface of Video Playback

You can search for and play back the recorded video saved on the Device. Select **Main Menu > VIDEO**, the video search interface is displayed. See Figure 5-94.



Figure 5-94

No.	Function	Description				
1		Display the searched recorded video or picture. It supports playing				
		in single-channel, 4-channel, 9-channel, and 16-channel				
		simultaneously.				
	Display Window	NOTE NOTE				
		When playing back in a single channel mode, hold down the left				
		mouse button to select the area that you want to enlarge. The area				
		is enlarged after the left mouse button is released. To exit the				
		enlarged status, right-click on the image.				
2	Playback	Playback control buttons. For details about the control buttons, see				
	Controls Bar	"5.9.3.2 Introducing Playback Controls."				
3		Display the type and time period of the current recorded video.				
	Time Bar In the 4-channel layout, there are four time bars are dis					
		in the other view layouts, only one time bar is displayed.				

No.	Function	Description
		<ul> <li>Click on the colored area to start playback from a certain time.</li> <li>In the situation when you are configuring the settings, rotate the wheel button on the time bar, the time bar is zooming in from 0. In the situation when playback is ongoing, rotate the wheel button on the time bar, the time bar is zooming from the time point where the playback is located.</li> <li>Time bar colors: Green indicates general type; Red indicates external alarm; Yellow indicates motion detection; Blue indicates intelligent events; Purple indicates POS events.</li> <li>For some models, when you are clicking on the blank area in the time bar, the system automatically jumps to the next time point where there is a recorded video located.</li> </ul>
4	Play Status	Includes two playback status: <b>Play</b> and <b>Stop</b> .
5	Sync	Select the <b>Sync</b> check box to simultaneously play recorded videos of different channels in the same period in multi-channel view.
6	Record type	Select the check box to define the recording type to search for.
7	Search type	Select the content to play back: <b>Record</b> , <b>PIC</b> , <b>Splice Playback</b> . For details about the selecting search type, see "5.9.3.3 Selecting Search Type."
8	Calendar	Click the date that you want to search, the time bar displays the corresponding record. The dates with record or snapshot have a small solid circle under the date.
9	View Layout and Channel Selection	<ul> <li>In the CAM NAME list, select the channel(s) that you want to play back.</li> <li>The window split is decided by how you select the channel(s). For example, if you select one channel, the playback is displayed in the single-channel view; if you select two to four channels, the playback is displayed in the four-channel view. The maximum is eight channels.</li> <li>Click I to switch the streams. I indicates main stream, and I indicates sub stream.</li> </ul>
10	Video Splice	Splice a section of recorded video and save it. For details about splicing a recorded video, see "5.9.3.4 Clipping Recorded Video."
11	Backup	Back up the recorded video files. For details, see "5.9.3.5 Backing up Recorded Video."
12	List Display	<ul> <li>This area includes Mark List and File List.</li> <li>Click the Mark List button, the marked recorded video list is displayed. Double-click the file to start playing.</li> <li>Click the File List button, the searched recorded video list is displayed. You can lock the files. For details, see "5.9.8 Using the File List."</li> </ul>

No.	Function	Description					
13	Full Screen	Click to display in full screen. In the full screen mode, point to the bottom of the screen, the time bar is displayed. Right-click on the screen to exit full screen mode.					
14	Time Bar Unit	You can select 24hr, 2hr, 1hr, or 30min as the unit of time bar. The time bar display changes with the setting.					
L	Tablo 5.32						

Table 5-32

# 5.9.3.2 Introducing Playback Controls Bar

You can perform the operations such as control the speed of playback, add mark, and take snapshots through the playback controls bar. See Figure 5-95 and Table 5-33.



Figure 5-95

# 

The play backward function and playback speed are dependent on the product version. The actual product shall govern. You can also contact the technical support to consult the hardware version information.

Icon	Function
► II	Play/Pause.
<b>, , , ,</b>	During playing back, you can switch between play and pause.
	Stop.
-	During playing back, you can click the <b>Stop</b> button to stop playback.
	Play Backward.
	• During playing back, click the <b>Play Backward</b> button to backward
	play the recorded video, the button switches to 🛄; click 🔟
,	to stop playing backward.
	• During playing back, click <b>b</b> to start playing forward.
	Previous Frame/Next Frame.
	• When the playback is paused, click or click to play
	single-frame recorded video.
,	• When playing back single-frame recorded video, click ID to
	start playing forward.
	Slow Playback.
_	• During playing back, click to set the speed of slow playback
	as SlowX1/2, SlowX1/4, SlowX1/8, or SlowX1/16.
	• During fast playback, click to slow down the speed of fast
	playback.

lcon	Function				
<ul> <li>Fast Playback.</li> <li>During playing back, click to set the speed of fast playl as FastX2, FastX4, FastX8, or FastX16.</li> <li>During slow playback, click to speed up slow playback</li> </ul>					
	revious Day/Next Day. Click or click to play the previous day or next day of the urrent recorded video.				
•	Adjust volume of playback.				
*	Smart Search. For details about the using the smart search, see "5.9.4 Smart Search."				
Ō	In the full screen mode, click <b>to</b> to take a snapshot and save into the USB storage device or mobile HDD.				
*	Add Mark for the recorded view. For details about adding mark, see "5.9.5 Marking and Playing Back Video."				
XXX XXX	Hide POS Hide. During single-channel playback, click to display or hide POS information on the screen.				

Table 5-33

## 5.9.3.3 Selecting Search Type

You can search the recorded videos, splice, or snapshots from HDD or external storage device.

 From R/W HDD: Recorded videos or snapshots playback from HDD of the Device. See Figure 5-96.



Figure 5-96

• **From I/O Device**: Recorded videos playback from external storage device. See Figure 5-97.

Click **Browse**, select the save path of recorded video file that you want to play.

Double-click the video file or click **b** to start playing.



Figure 5-97

## 5.9.3.4 Clipping Recorded Video

During playback, clip sections of recorded video and save to the USB storage device. For the video clip interface, see Figure 5-98.



Step 1 Select a recorded video that you want to play.

- Click local to start playing from the beginning.
- Double-click anywhere in the time bar colored area to start playback.

<u>Step 2</u> Click on the time bar to select the start time, and then click K to start clipping.

<u>Step 3</u> Click on the time bar to select the start time, and then click K to stop clipping.



The **BACKUP** dialog box is displayed. You can back up the files.

🛄 NOTE

- You can clip the video of a single-channel or multiple channels.
- Maximum 1024 files can be backed up at one time.
- The files that are selected in the File List cannot be clipped.

## 5.9.3.5 Backing up Recorded Video

You can back up the recorded video file or splice video file into the USB storage device.

<u>Step 1</u> Select the recorded video file that you want to back up. You can select the following two types of files:

- Recorded video file: Click I, the **File List** area is displayed. Select the file(s) that you want to back up.
- Splice video file. For details about splicing video file, see "5.9.3.4 Clipping Recorded Video."



The **BACKUP** dialog box is displayed. See Figure 5-99.

BAC	KUP									
	1		Na	ame(Type)	Free	Space/Total S	pace	Device Sta	atus	
		√ s	db5(U	SB DISK)	15.6	60 GB/15.60 G	B	Ready		
	2	√C	Н Тур	e Start	Time	End Time	Size(	KB)		
		$\checkmark$	1 R	17-11-0	8 01:00:00	17-11-08 02	2:00:00 1	847872		
	2	$\checkmark$	1 R	17-11-0	8 02:00:00	17-11-08 0	3:00:00 1	847632		
	Space	Requi	red/S	Space Rem	aining:3.52	GB/15.60 GB	Backu	ip Cle	ear	

Figure 5-99

#### Step 3 Click Backup.

If you do not want to back the file, clear the check box.

# 5.9.4 Smart Search

During playback, you can analyze a certain area to find if there was any motion detection event occurred. The system will display the images with motion events of the recorded video.

Not all models support this function.

To use the Smart Search function, you need to enable the motion detection for the channel by selecting Main Menu > ALARM > VIDEO DETECT > Motion Detect.

To use the Smart Search function, do the following:

- <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > VIDEO, the video search interface is displayed.
- Step 2 In the CAME NAME list, select the channel(s) that you want to play.
- Step 3 Click or double-click anywhere in the time bar colored area to start playback.

Step 4 Click

The grid is displayed on the screen.

NOTE

- Only single-channel supports smart search.
- If multi-channels are selected, double-click on the channel window to display this channel only on the screen, and then you can start using smart search function.

<u>Step 5</u> Drag the pointer to select the searching area.



# 5.9.5 Marking and Playing Back Video

You can mark the recording for somewhere important. Then you can easily find the marked recording by searching time and mark name.

## Marking a Video

Step 1 Select Main Menu > VIDEO, the video search interface is displayed.

Step 2 In the playback mode, click

The Add Mark dialog box is displayed. See Figure 5-100.

Add Mark	
Mark Time Name	
Default	OK Cancel
Derault	Cancel

Figure 5-100

<u>Step 3</u> In the **Name** box, enter a name.

Step 4 Click OK.

This marked video file displays in the Mark List.

## Playing Back Marked Video

#### 

This function is supported on single-channel playback. <u>Step 1</u> In the **CAME NAME** list, select one channel.

Step 2 Click

The Mark List interface is displayed. See Figure 5-101.

00:00:00 Q	
1	
Mark Time Name	
03:19:30 123	
10:30:34 456	
Name	
Play time before the mark	
0 Sec.	
<b>*</b>	

Figure 5-101

Step 3 Double-click the file that you want to play back. To search the marked video by time, in the SEARCH box on the top of the interface,

enter the time, and then click Q.

### Playing Back Time before the Mark

You can configure to play N seconds of the marked video before the marked time.

- Step 1 In the Name box, enter the name of a marked video.
- Step 2 In the Playback time before the mark box, enter N seconds.

Step 3 Click

The playback starts from N seconds before the marked time.

NOTE

If there is N seconds exist before the marked time, the playback starts from N seconds before the marked time. If there is not, it plays back as much as there is.

### Managing Marked Video

In the **Mark List** interface, click **Manager** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-102.

Manager		
Channel	5 🔹	
Start Time	2017 - 11 - 08 00 : 00 : 00	
End Time	2017 - 11 - 09 00 : 00 : 00	Search
2 CH	Mark Time	Name
1 5	2017-11-08 03:19:30	123
2 5	2017-11-08 10:30:34	456
Delete		Cancel

Figure 5-102

- Be default, it manages all the marked videos of the selected channel.
- To search the marked video, select channel number from the **Channel** list, enter time in **Start Time** box and **End Time** box, and then click **Search**.
- All the marked videos display in time order.
- To modify the name of marked video, double-click a marked video, the **Edit Mark** dialog box is displayed.
- To delete the marked video, select the marked video, and then click **Delete**.

NOTE

After opening the **Manger** interface, the playback will pause until exiting this interface. If the marked video that was in playing back is deleted, the playback will start from the first marked video in the **Mark List**.

## 5.9.6 Playing Back Snapshots

You can search and play back the snapshots.

- Step 1 Select Main Menu > VIDEO, the video search interface is displayed.
- <u>Step 2</u> In the Search Type list, select PIC.
- <u>Step 3</u> In the **Channel** list, select a channel number.
- <u>Step 4</u> In the **Calendar** area, select a date.

Step 5 Click

The system starts playing snapshots according to the configured intervals.

# 5.9.7 Playing Back Splices

You can clip the recorded video files into splices and then play back at the same time to save your time.

Not all models support this function.

- <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > VIDEO, the video search interface is displayed.
- <u>Step 2</u> In the **Search Type** list, select **Splice Playback**; In the Split Mode list, select **4**, **9**, or **16**. See Figure 5-103.



Figure 5-103

- <u>Step 3</u> In the **Calendar** area, select a date.
- <u>Step 4</u> In the **CAM NAME** list, select a channel.

Only single-channel supports this function.

- <u>Step 5</u> Start playing back splices. See Figure 5-104.
  - Click Late, the playback starts from the beginning.
  - Double-click anywhere on the time bar, the playback starts from where you click.



Figure 5-104

Every recorded video file must be at least five minutes. If a recorded video file is less than 20 minutes but still choose to split into four windows, the system will automatically adjust the windows quantity to ensure every splice is more than five minutes, and in this case it is possible that there are no images are displaying in some windows.

# 5.9.8 Using the File List

You can view all the recorded videos within a certain period from any channel in the File List.

- <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > VIDEO, the video search interface is displayed.
- <u>Step 2</u> Select a channel(s).
- Step 3 Click

The File List interface is displayed. See Figure 5-105.

00:00:00 Q
1 StartTime Type
00:00:00 R
01:00:00 R
02:00:00 R
03:00:00 R
04:00:00 R
05:00:00 R
06:00:00 R
07:00:00 R
08:00:00 R
09:00:00 R
10:00:00 R
11:00:00 R
Start Time 17-11-08 00:00:00
End Time
17-11-08 01:00:00
Size(KB) 1847776

Figure 5-105

Step 4 Start playback.

- Click , the playback starts from the first file by default.
- Click any file, the system plays back this file.

D NOTE

- In the time box on the top of the file list interface, you can enter the specific time to search the file that you want to view.
- In the File List area, there are 128 files can be displayed.
- File type: R indicates general recorded video; A indicates recorded video with external alarms; M indicates recorded video with motion detection events; I indicates recorded video with intelligent vents.
- Click to return to the interface with calendar and CAM NAME list.

Locking and Unlocking the Recorded Video

- To lock the recorded video, in the **File List** interface, select the check box of the recorded video, and then click . The locked video will not be covered.
- To view the locked information, click *I*, the **FILE LOCKED** interface is displayed.

The recorded video that is under writing or overwriting cannot be locked.

 To unlock the recorded video, in the FILE LOCKED interface, select the video, and then click Unlock. See Figure 5-106.



Figure 5-106

# 5.10 Alarm Events Settings

## 5.10.1 Video Detection

Video detection adopts computer vision and image processing technology. The technology analyzes the video images to detect the obvious changes such as moving objects and blurriness. The system activates alarms when such changes are detected.

## 5.10.1.1 Configuring Motion Detect Settings

When the moving object appears and moves fast enough to reach the preset sensitivity value, the system activates the alarm.

To configure the motion detect settings, do the following:

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ALARM > VIDIEO DETECT > Motion Detect.

The Motion Detect interface is displayed. See Figure 5-107.

📒 ALARM				
ALARM INFO	Motion Detect Vid	deo Loss Tamperir	ng Diagnosis	
ALARM INPUT	Channel	1	▼ Region	Set
ALARM OUTPUT	Enable MD		Enable PIR	
> VIDEO DETECT	Period	Set	Anti-Dither 5	Sec.
ABNORMALITY	Alarm Out Show Message Record Channel PTZ Tour Snapshot Video Matrix Voice Prompts	Set         Alarm Upload         1 2 3 4 5 6 7         Set         1 2 3 4 5 6 7         1 2 3 4 5 6 7         Buzzer         None	Latch 10 Send Email 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 Post Record 10	5 16
	Default Co	py Test		Apply Back

Figure 5-107

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the motion detection parameters. See Table 5-34.

Parameter	Description			
Channel	In the <b>Channel</b> list, select a channel to set the motion detection.			
Region	Click <b>Setting</b> to define the motion detection region.			
Enable MD	Enable or disable the motion detection function.			
Enable PIR	<ul> <li>PIR function helps enhancing the accuracy and validity of motion detect. It can filter the meaningless alarms that are activated by the objects such as falling leaves, flies. The detection range by PIR is smaller than the field angle.</li> <li>PIR function is enabled by default if it is supported by the cameras. Enabling PIR function will get the motion detect to be enabled automatically to generate motion detection alarms; if the PIR function is not enabled, the motion detect just has the general effect.</li> <li>Image: Note in the channel type is CVI, the PIR function can be enabled.</li> <li>If the camera does not support PIR function, it will be unusable.</li> </ul>			
	<ul> <li>If the Device does not support PIR function, it will not be displayed on the interface.</li> </ul>			
Period	Define a period during which the motion detection is active.			

Parameter	Description
	Configure the event detection lasting time. The system records
Anti-Dither	only one event during this period. The value ranges from 5
	seconds to 300 seconds.
	Click <b>Setting</b> to display setting interface.
	General Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the alarm
	devices connected to the selected output port.
Alarm Out	• External Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the
	connected alarm box.
	Wireless Siren: Enable alarm activation through devices
	connected by USB gateway or camera gateway.
	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after
	the external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 0 seconds
Latch	to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds. If you enter 0,
	there will be no delay.
	Select the <b>Show Message</b> check box to enable a pop-up message
Show Message	in your local host PC.
	Select the <b>Alarm Upload</b> check box to enable the system to
Alarm Upload	upload the alarm signal to the network (including alarm center)
, ann opioud	when an alarm event occurs.
	Select the <b>Send Email</b> check box to enable the system to send an
	email notification when an alarm event occurs.
Send Email	
	To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in
	Main Menu > NETWORK > EMAIL.
	Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected
	channel(s) starts recording after an alarm event occurs.
Record Channel	
	The recording for motion detection and auto recording function
	must be enabled. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded
	Video Storage Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."
	Click <b>Setting</b> to display the PTZ interface.
	Enable PTZ activation function. For each PTZ camera, select the
PTZ	preset that you want to be called when an alarm event occurs.
	NOTE
	Motion Detect can only activate PTZ preset.
	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording
Post Record	after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to
	300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.
	Select the <b>Tour</b> check box to enable a tour of the selected
	channels.
Tour	NOTE NOTE
	To use this function, make sure the tour is enabled and configured
	in Main Menu > DISPLAY > TOUR.

Parameter	Description		
	Select the <b>Snapshot</b> check box to take a snapshot of the selected		
	channel.		
	NOTE NOTE		
	To use this function, make sure the following settings are		
Snapshot	configured:		
	• The snapshot function is enabled for motion detect alarms in		
	Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot.		
	• Select Main Menu > CAMERA > Snapshot, in the Mode list,		
	select Event.		
	Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event		
	occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in		
Video Matrix	Main Menu > DISPLAY > TOUR.		
	D NOTE		
	Not all models support this function.		
Buzzer	Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.		
1.5.7	Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm		
Log	log.		
	Select to enable audio broadcast/voice prompts in response to a		
Voice Prompts	motion detection event.		

Table 5-34

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to save the settings.

- Click **Default** to restore the default setting.
- Click **Copy**, in the **Copy** dialog box, select the additional channel(s) that you want to copy the motion detection settings to, and then click **Apply**.
- Click **Test** to test the settings.

#### **Setting the Motion Detection Region**

Step 1 Next to **Region**, click **Setting**.

The region setting screen is displayed.

- <u>Step 2</u> Point to the middle top of the interface.
  - The setting interface is displayed. See Figure 5-108.

1	2	3	4
Name	Region1		
Sensitivity		<b>•</b> + 8	0
Threshold	- •	+ (	

Figure 5-108

<u>Step 3</u> Configure the regions settings. You can configure totally four regions.

1) Select one region, for example, click

2) Drag on the screen to select the region that you want to detect. The selected area shows the color that represents the region.

3) (0	onfigure the parameters.
Parameter	Description
Name	Enter a name for the region.
Sensitivity	Every region of every channel has an individual sensitivity value.
	The bigger the value is, the easier the alarms can be activated.
Threshold	Adjust the threshold for motion detect. Every region of every channel
	has an individual threshold.

Configure the nerometer

Figure 5-109

### 

When anyone of the four regions activates motion detect alarm, the channel where this region belongs to will activate motion detect alarm.

Step 4 Right-click on the screen to exit the region setting interface.

Step 5 On the Motion Detect interface, click Apply to complete the settings.

#### **Setting Motion Detection Period**

NOTE

The system only activates the alarm in the defined period.

#### Step 1 Next to Period, click Setting.

The **Setting** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-110.





<u>Step 2</u> Define the motion detection period. By default, it is active all the time.

- Define the period by drawing.
  - ♦ Define for a specified day of a week: On the timeline, click the half-hour blocks to select the active period.

♦ Define for several days of a week: Click 🛄 before each day, the icon

switches to E. On the timeline of any selected day, click the half-hour blocks

to select the active periods, all the days with evil take the same settings.

 $\diamond$  Define for all days of a week: Click All, all  $\square$  switches to  $\square$ . On the

timeline of any day, click the half-hour blocks to select the active periods, all the days will take the same settings.

- Define the period by editing. Take Sunday as an example.
- 1) Click .

The **Period** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-111.

Period	
Current Date:	Sunday
Period 1	00:00 - 24:00
Period 2	00:00 - 24:00
Period 3	00:00 - 24:00
Period 4	00:00 - 24:00
Period 5	00:00 - 24:00
Period 6	00:00 - 24:00
Сору	
Sunday	🗌 Monday 🔄 Tuesday 📄 Wednesday 📄 Thursday 📄 Friday 📄 Saturday
	OK

Figure 5-111

- 2) Enter the time frame for the period and select the check box to enable the settings.
  - $\diamond$  There are six periods for you to set for each day.
  - ♦ Under Copy, select All to apply the settings to all the days of a week, or select specific day(s) that you want to apply the settings to.
- 3) Click **OK** to save the settings.

Step 3 On the Motion Detect interface, click Apply to complete the settings.

## 5.10.1.2 Configuring Video Loss Settings

When the video loss occurs, the system activates the alarm. To configure the motion detect settings, do the following:

#### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ALARM > VIDIEO DETECT > Video Loss.

The Video Loss interface is displayed. See Figure 5-112.

🔔 ALARM				LIVE	
ALARM INFO	Motion Detect Vid	leo Loss Tampe	ring Diagnosis		
ALARM INPUT	Channel	1			
ALARM OUTPUT	Enable				
> VIDEO DETECT					
ABNORMALITY	Period Alarm Out	Setting Setting	CAM AntiDither Latch	0 Sec. 10 Sec.	
	Show Message	✓ Alarm Upload	Send Email	IU Sec.	
	Record Channel	12345	6 7 8 9 10 11 12		
	PTZ	Setting	Post Record	10 Sec.	
	Tour				
	Snapshot				
	Buzzer	🗹 Log			
	Voice Prompts	None			
	Default Cop	ру		Apply	Back

Figure 5-112

<u>Step 2</u> To configure the settings for the video loss detection parameters, see "5.10.1.1 Configuring Motion Detect Settings."

For PTZ activation, different from motion detection, the video loss detection can activate PTZ preset, tour, and pattern.

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

- Click **Default** to restore the default setting.
- Click **Copy**, in the **Copy** dialog box, select the additional channel(s) that you want to copy the motion detection settings to, and then click **Apply**.

## 5.10.1.3 Configuring Tampering Settings

When the camera lens is covered, or the video is displayed in a single color because of the causes such as sunlight status, the monitoring cannot be continued normally. To avoid such situations, you can configure the tampering alarm settings.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ALARM > VIDIEO DETECT > Tampering.

The **Tampering** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-113.

🔔 ALARM				
ALARM INFO	Motion Detect Vid	leo Loss Tampering	Diagnosis	
ALARM INPUT	Channel	1 *		
ALARM OUTPUT	Enable		Sensitivity	3 🔹
<ul> <li>VIDEO DETECT</li> </ul>	Period	Catting	CAM AntiDither	0 Sec.
ABNORMALITY	Alarm Out	Setting Setting	Latch	0 Sec.
	Show Message	Alarm Upload	Send Email	000.
	Record Channel			3 14 15 16
	PTZ	Setting	Post Record	10 Sec.
	Tour			3 14 15 16
	Snapshot			3 14 15 16
	Buzzer	✓ Log		
	Voice Prompts	None		
	Default Co	ру		Apply Back

Figure 5-113

<u>Step 2</u> To configure the settings for the tampering detection parameters, see "5.10.1.1 Configuring Motion Detect Settings."

For PTZ activation, different from motion detection, the video loss detection can activate PTZ preset, tour, and pattern.

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

NOTE

- Click **Default** to restore the default setting.
- Click **Copy**, in the **Copy** dialog box, select the additional channel(s) that you want to copy the motion detection settings to, and then click **Apply**.

## 5.10.1.4 Configuring Diagnosis Settings

## NOTE

This function can be used only when it is supported by the camera.

When the video appear the conditions such as blurry, overexposed, or the color changes, the system activates the alarm.

To configure the diagnosis settings, do the following:

#### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ALARM > VIDIEO DETECT > Diagnosis.

The **Diagnosis** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-114.

🔔 ALARM					
ALARM INFO	Motion Detect	Video Loss	Tampering	Diagnosis	
ALARM INPUT	Channel	1			
ALARM OUTPUT	Enable			Rule	Setting
<ul> <li>VIDEO DETECT</li> </ul>	Period	Setting			
ABNORMALITY	Alarm Out	Setting Alarm Log	Upload *	Latch	10 Sec.
	Default				Apply Back

Figure 5-114

- <u>Step 2</u> To configure the settings for the diagnosis parameters, see "5.10.1.1 Configuring Motion Detect Settings."
- <u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

D NOTE

Click **Default** to restore the default setting.

### Setting the Types for Diagnosing Targets

#### <u>Step 1</u> Next to **Rule**, click **Setting**.

The **Diagnosis** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-115.

Diagnosis		
Stripe	□•	+ 30
Noise	□•	<b>+</b> 30
Color Cast	□•	<b>+</b> 30
Out of Focus	□•	+ 30
Overexposure	□•	+ 30
	Apply	Back

Figure 5-115

<u>Step 2</u> Select the items that you want to diagnose and set the threshold (30 by default). See Table 5-35.

Parameter	Description		
	A horizontal, vertical or diagonal stripe that might appear in the		
Stripe	video because of device aging or electronic interruption. Such		
	stripe brings visual interruption.		
Noise	Video noises such as blurriness or quality reduction that is caused		
	by optical distortion or device problem during camera shooting.		
Color Cast	Variances in the normal proportions of RGB colors.		
	Blurry video is caused during camera shooting, transferring and		
Out of Focus	processing. Such condition is a common image quality reduction		
	problem and defined as out of focus.		
	The video brightness refers to the intensity of image pixel. The		
	range is between 0 (the darkest black) and 255 (the brightest		
Overexposure	white). If the brightness exceeds the threshold, the image is over		
	exposed.		
	The range is from 1 through 100. If the value after diagnosing is		
Threshold	higher than what you set, the system activates the alarm to the		
	corresponding diagnosing types such as stripe.		

Table 5-35

<u>Step 3</u> Click **OK** to save the settings.

The system returns to the **Diagnosis** interface.

<u>Step 4</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

Click Default to restore the default setting.

# 5.10.2 IVS Function

Please disable IP channels function first before using IVS function.

IVS function processes and analyzes the images to extract the key information to match with the preset rules. When the detected behaviors match with the rules, the system activates alarms.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > IVS > INTELL SETTING.

The INTELL SETTING interface is displayed. See Figure 5-116.

j⊛j ivs				
> INTELL SETTING	Channel	1		
	0 Enable	Name	Туре	Preset [
				•
				Add
				Apply Cancel

Figure 5-116

- <u>Step 2</u> In the **Channel** list, select the channel number that you want to configure the IVS function for.
- Step 3 Click Add.

One line of rule is displayed. See Figure 5-117.
<u>,</u> ⊛ ıvs				
> INTELL SETTING	Channel	1		
	1 Enable	Name	Туре	Preset [
		Rule1	Tripwire 🗸	-
				•
				Add
				Apply Cancel

Figure 5-117

<u>Step 4</u> Configure the parameters for the rule that you selected.

<u>Step 5</u> Select the check box of the rule to enable it.

<u>Step 6</u> Click Apply to complete the settings.

#### 5.10.2.1 Configuring Tripwire Rules

When the target object crosses the tripwire in the defined direction, the system activates alarms.

- The tripwire can be configured as a straight line or broken line.
- Supports detecting one-way or two-way tripwire crossing.
- Supports multiple tripwires in the same scenario to meet the complexity.
- Supports size filtering for target.

<u>Step 1</u> On the rule line that you added, in the **Type** list, select **Tripwire**. See Figure 5-118.

<b>,⊛</b> ivs				
> INTELL SETTING	Channel	1		
	1 Enable	Name	Туре	Preset [
		Rule1	Tripwire 🔹	
				Add
				Apply Cancel

Figure 5-118

<u>Step 2</u> Draw a tripwire.

- 1) In the **Channel** list, select the channel that you want to configure the rules for.
- 2) Click

The monitoring screen to configure the tripwire rules is displayed. See Figure 5-119.



Figure 5-119

3) Configure the settings for the parameters of drawing rules. See Table 5-36.

Parameter	Description
Name	Enter the customized rule name.
Direction	Set the direction of the tripwire. You can choose <b>A to B</b> (left to
Direction	right), <b>B to A</b> (right to left), and <b>Both</b> .
Filtering Target	Click to draw areas to filter the target. NOTE You can configure two filtering targets (maximum size and minimum size). When the target that is crossing the tripwire is smaller than the minimum size or larger than the maximum size, no alarms will be activated. The maximum size should be larger than the minimum size.

Table 5-36

- 4) Drag to draw a tripwire. The tripwire can be a straight line, broken line or polygon.
- 5) Click **Save** to save the settings.

<u>Step 3</u> Click to set the actions to be triggered.

The **Trigger** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-120.

Trigger					
Period	Set				
Alarm Out	Set		Latch	10	Sec.
Show Message	🔽 Alarm Upload		Send Email		
🔽 Record Channel					
PTZ	Set		Post Record	10	Sec.
Tour					
Snapshot					
Video Matrix	Buzzer	🖌 Log			
Voice Prompts	None				
				ОК	Back

Figure 5-120

<u>Step 4</u>	Configure the	triggering para	ameters. See Table 5-37.
---------------	---------------	-----------------	--------------------------

Parameter	Description
	Click <b>Set</b> to display set interface.
Period	Define a period during which the motion detection is active. For
	details, see "Setting Motion Detection Period" section in "5.10.1.1
	Configuring Motion Detect Settings."
	Click <b>Setting</b> to display setting interface.
	General Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the alarm
	devices connected to the selected output port.
Alarm Out	External Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the
	connected alarm box.
	Wireless Siren: Enable alarm activation through devices
	connected by USB gateway or camera gateway.
	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after
Latch	the external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 0 seconds
	to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.
Show Message	Select the <b>Show Message</b> check box to enable a pop-up message
Show wessage	in your local host PC.
	Select the Alarm Upload check box to enable the system to
Alarm Upload	upload the alarm signal to the network (including alarm center)
	when an alarm event occurs.
	Select the Send Email check box to enable the system to send an
	email notification when an alarm event occurs.
Send Email	NOTE NOTE
	To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in
	Main Menu > NETWORK > EMAIL.
Record Channel	Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected

Parameter	Description
	channel(s) starts recording after an alarm event occurs.
	NOTE NOTE
	The recording for intelligence event and auto recording function
	must be enabled. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded
	Video Storage Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."
	Click <b>Set</b> to display the PTZ interface.
	Enable PTZ activation function. For each PTZ camera, select the
PTZ	preset that you want to be called when an alarm event occurs.
	NOTE NOTE
	Motion Detect can only activate PTZ preset.
	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording
Post Record	after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to
	300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.
	Select the <b>Tour</b> check box to enable a tour of the selected
	channels.
Tour	NOTE NOTE
	To use this function, make sure the tour is enabled and configured
	in Main Menu > DISPLAY > TOUR.
	Select the <b>Snapshot</b> check box to take a snapshot of the selected
	channel.
	NOTE
Snapshot	To use this function, make sure the following settings are configured:
Shapshot	<ul> <li>The snapshot function is enabled for motion detect alarms in</li> </ul>
	Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot.
	<ul> <li>Select Main Menu &gt; CAMERA &gt; Snapshot, in the Mode list,</li> </ul>
	select Event.
	Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event
	occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in
Video Matrix	"Main Menu > Display > Tour."
	NOTE NOTE
	Not all models support this function.
Buzzer	Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.
Lan	Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm
Log	log.
Vaios Promoto	Select to enable audio broadcast/voice prompts in response to a
Voice Prompts	motion detection event.

<u>Step 5</u> Click **Apply** to save the settings.

The INTELL SETTING interface is displayed.

<u>Step 6</u> Select the **Enable** check box, and then click **Apply**.

The tripwire detecting function is active. When the target object crosses the tripwire in the defined direction, the system activates alarms.

## 5.10.2.2 Configuring Intrusion Rules

When the target enters and leaves the area, or the target appears in the defined area, the system activates alarms.

- You can define the shape and quantity of intrusion areas.
- Supports detecting the behaviors that enter and leave the intrusion areas.
- Supports detecting the behaviors that are moving in the intrusion areas. The quantity of areas and lasting time can be configured.
- Supports size filtering for target.

<u>Step 1</u> On the rule line that you added, in the **Type** list, select **Intrusion**. See Figure 5-121.

j⊛j ivs				
> INTELL SETTING	Channel 5	;		
		,		
	2 Enable	Name	Туре	Preset [
		Rule1	Tripwire	
	2	Rule2	Intrusion	
-				
				Add
				Apply Cancel

Figure 5-121

Step 2 Draw a tripwire.

- 1) In the **Channel** list, select the channel that you want to configure the rules for.
- 2) Click

The monitoring screen to configure the intrusion rules is displayed. See Figure 5-122.



Figure 5-122

3) Configure the settings for the parameters of drawing rules. See Table 5-38Table 5-36.

Parameter	Description	
Name	Enter the customized rule name.	
Action	Configure the actions that are defined as intrusion. You can select	
Action	the <b>Appear</b> check box and the <b>Cross</b> check box.	
Direction	In the <b>Direction</b> list, select the direction of crossing the configured	
Direction	area. You can select Enter&Exit, Enters, and Exits.	
	Click  to draw areas to filter the target.	
Filtering Target	You can configure two filtering targets (maximum size and	
Filtering larget	minimum size). When the target that is crossing the tripwire is	
	smaller than the minimum size or larger than the maximum size, no	
	alarms will be activated. The maximum size should be larger than	
	the minimum size.	

Table 5-38

- 4) Drag to draw an area.
- 5) Click **Save** to save the settings.
- Step 3 Click to set the actions to be triggered. For details, see "5.10.2.1 Configuring Tripwire Rules."
- <u>Step 4</u> Select the **Enable** check box, and then click **Apply**.

The intrusion detecting function is active. When the target enters and leaves the area, or the target appears in the defined area, the system activates alarms.

## 5.10.2.3 Configuring Abandoned Rules

When the object is placed in the defined detection area for more than the set time, the system activates alarms.

- You can define the shape and quantity of intrusion areas.
- Period value can be configured.
- Supports size filtering for target.

Step 1 On the rule line that you added, in the Type list, select Abandoned.

The Abandoned interface is displayed. See Figure 5-123.

vs 😥 ا				LIVE 💄 🖬 🚽 🔡
> INTELL SETTING	Channel	5		
	3 Enable	Name	Туре	Preset [
		Rule1	Tripwire 🔻	
	2	Rule2	Intrusion -	
	3	Rule3	Abandoned -	
				Add
				Apply Cancel

Figure 5-123

#### Step 2 Draw an area.

1) In the **Channel** list, select the channel that you want to configure the rules for.



The monitoring screen to configure the abandoned rules is displayed. See Figure 5-124.



Figure 5-124

3)	Configure the settings	for the parameters	of drawing rules	See Table 5-39
- 0 )	Configure the settings	ior the parameters	of urawing rules.	

Parameter	Description
Name	Enter the customized rule name.
Period	Configure the minimum time period for activating alarms by
Fellou	detecting the abandoned objects.
Filtering Target	Click I to draw areas to filter the target. NOTE You can configure two filtering targets (maximum size and minimum size). When the target that is crossing the tripwire is smaller than the minimum size or larger than the maximum size, no alarms will be activated. The maximum size should be larger than the minimum size.

Table 5-39

- 4) Drag to draw an area.
- 5) Click **Save** to save the settings.
- Step 3 Click to set the actions to be triggered. For details, see "5.10.2.1 Configuring Tripwire Rules."

#### <u>Step 4</u> Select the **Enable** check box, and then click **Apply**.

The abandoned object detecting function is active. When the object is placed in the defined detection area for more than the set time, the system activates alarms.

## 5.10.2.4 Configuring Missing Rules

When the target is taken away from the defined area exceeds the set time, the system activates alarms.

<u>Step 1</u> On the rule line that you added, in the **Type** list, select **Missing**.

🙊 ivs					LIVE	
> INTELL SETTING						
	Channel	5				
	4 Enable	Name	Туре		Preset	C
		Rule1	Tripwire			
		Rule2	Intrusion			
		Rule3	Abandoned			
	4		Missing	•		
					Add	
					Apply Ca	ncel

The **Missing** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-125.

Figure 5-125

Step 2 Draw an area.

- 1) In the **Channel** list, select the channel that you want to configure the rules for.
- 2) Click

The monitoring screen to configure the missing rules is displayed. See Figure 5-126.



Figure 5-126

3) Configure the settings for the parameters of drawing rules. See Table 5-40.

Parameter	Description
Name	Enter the customized rule name.
Period	Configure the minimum time period for activating alarms by
Fellou	detecting the missing objects.
Filtering Target	Click I to draw areas to filter the target. NOTE You can configure two filtering targets (maximum size and minimum size). When the target that is crossing the tripwire is smaller than the minimum size or larger than the maximum size, no alarms will be activated. The maximum size should be larger than the minimum size.

Table 5-40

- 4) Drag to draw an area.
- 5) Click **Save** to save the settings.

Click to set the actions to be triggered. For details, see "5.10.2.1 Configuring Tripwire Rules."

#### <u>Step 3</u> Select the **Enable** check box, and then click **Apply**.

The missing object detecting function is active. When the target is taken away from the defined area exceeds the set time, the system activates alarms.

# 5.10.3 Face Detection

You can configure the face detection settings and search the detected faces in the defined time period.

#### 5.10.3.1 Configuring Face Detection Settings

When the Device detects the human faces, the system activates alarms.

- Not all models support this function.
- Smart IPC must be equipped with face detect function.

Step 1 Select Main Menu > FACE DETECT > Parameters.

The Human Face interface is displayed. See Figure 5-127.

🚊 FACE DETECT				
SMART SEARCH	Human Face			
> PARAMETERS	Channel Enable	1 *	Target Filter	Setting
	Period Alarm Out Send Email	Setting Setting	Latch	10 Sec.
	✓ Record Channel PTZ	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 Setting	8 9 10 11 12 1: Post Record	3] 14 15 16 10 Sec.
	Snapshot			
	Uvice Prompts	None 🔻		
	Default			Apply Back

Figure 5-127

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the face detection parameters. See Table 5-41.

Parameter	Description
Channel	In the <b>Channel</b> list, select a channel to set the face detection.
	Click <b>Setting</b> to draw areas to filter the target.
Target Filter	You can configure two filtering targets (maximum size and minimum size). When the target is smaller than the minimum size or larger than the maximum size, no alarms will be activated. The
	maximum size should be larger than the minimum size.
Enable	Enable or disable the face detection function.

Period       Define a period during which the motion detection is active.         Click Setting to display setting interface.       Enable alarm activation function. Select the alarm output port(s) to which the peripheral alarm devices are connected. When an alarm event occurs, the system activates the peripheral alarm devices connected to the selected output port.         Latch       Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after the external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 0 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds. If you enter 0, there will be no delay.         Send Email       Select the Send Email check box to enable the system to send an email notification when an alarm event occurs.         Winter To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in Main Menu > NETWORK > EMAIL.         Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected channel(s) starts recording after an alarm event occurs.         Wideo Storage Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."         Click Setting to display the PTZ interface.         PTZ       Click Setting to display the PTZ interface.         Post Record       Select the Sanpshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel.         SnoTE       Select the Sanpshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel.         NOTE       Motion Detect can only activate PTZ preset.         Stale length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.	Parameter	Description
Alarm Out       Enable alarm activation function. Select the alarm output port(s) to which the peripheral alarm devices are connected. When an alarm event occurs, the system activates the peripheral alarm devices connected to the selected output port.         Latch       Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after the external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 0 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds. If you enter 0, there will be no delay.         Send Email       Select the Send Email check box to enable the system to send an email notification when an alarm event occurs.         Image: NoTE       To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in Main Menu > NETWORK > EMAIL.         Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected channel(s) starts recording after an alarm event occurs.       Image: NOTE         Record Channel       Click Setting to display the PTZ interface.       Enable PTZ activation function. For each PTZ camera, select the preset that you want to be called when an alarm event occurs.         PTZ       NOTE       Motion Detect can only activate PTZ preset.         Post Record       Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel.         Image: NOTE       NoTE         Motion Detect can only activate PTZ preset.       Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel.         Image: NoTE       NoTE       NoTE         Motion Detect can only activate PTZ preset.       Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the	Period	Define a period during which the motion detection is active.
Alarm Out       which the peripheral alarm devices are connected. When an alarm event occurs, the system activates the peripheral alarm devices connected to the selected output port.         Latch       Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after the external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 0 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds. If you enter 0, there will be no delay.         Send Email       Select the Send Email check box to enable the system to send an email notification when an alarm event occurs.         Image: NOTE       To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in Main Menu > NETWORK > EMAIL.         Record Channel       Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected channel(s) starts recording after an alarm event occurs.         Image: NOTE       The recording for intelligence event and auto recording function must be enabled. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."         PTZ       Click Setting to display the PTZ interface.         Enable PTZ activation function. For each PTZ camera, select the preset that you want to be called when an alarm event occurs.         Image: NOTE       NOTE         Motion Detect can only activate PTZ preset.         Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.         Set a length of time for the Device to take a snapshot of the selected channel.         Image: NOTE		Click <b>Setting</b> to display setting interface.
event occurs, the system activates the peripheral alarm devices connected to the selected output port.         Latch       Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after the external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 0 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds. If you enter 0, there will be no delay.         Send Email       Select the Send Email check box to enable the system to send an email notification when an alarm event occurs.         Send Email       Im NOTE         To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in Main Menu > NETWORK > EMAIL.         Record Channel       Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected channel(s) starts recording after an alarm event occurs.         Im NOTE       The recording for intelligence event and auto recording function must be enabled. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Record control."         Click Setting to display the PTZ interface.       Enable PTZ activation function. For each PTZ camera, select the preset that you want to be called when an alarm event occurs.         Im NOTE       Motion Detect can only activate PTZ preset.         Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.         Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel.         Im NOTE       To use this function, make sure the following settings are configured:         NOTE       To use this function is enabled for motion detect alarms in M		Enable alarm activation function. Select the alarm output port(s) to
connected to the selected output port.           Latch         Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after the external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 0 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds. If you enter 0, there will be no delay.           Select the Send Email check box to enable the system to send an email notification when an alarm event occurs.           Select the Send Email check box to enable the system to send an email notification when an alarm event occurs.           NOTE           To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in Main Menu > NETWORK > EMAIL.           Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected channel(s) starts recording after an alarm event occurs.           NOTE           The recording for intelligence event and auto recording function must be enabled. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."           Click Setting to display the PTZ interface.           Enable PTZ           Enable PTZ activation function. For each PTZ camera, select the preset that you want to be called when an alarm event occurs.           NOTE           Motion Detect can only activate PTZ preset.           Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.           Set a length of time for the Device to take a snapshot of the selected channel.           NOTE         To use thi	Alarm Out	which the peripheral alarm devices are connected. When an alarm
Latch       Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after the external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 0 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds. If you enter 0, there will be no delay.         Send Email       Select the Send Email check box to enable the system to send an email notification when an alarm event occurs.         Image: NoTE       To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in Main Menu > NETWORK > EMAIL.         Record Channel       Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected channel(s) starts recording after an alarm event occurs.         Image: NOTE       The recording for intelligence event and auto recording function must be enabled. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."         Click Setting to display the PTZ interface.       Enable PTZ activation function. For each PTZ camera, select the preset that you want to be called when an alarm event occurs.         Image: NOTE       NOTE         Motion Detect can only activate PTZ preset.         Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.         Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel.         Image: NOTE         To use this function, make sure the following settings are configured:         Snapshot         Select the Snapshot function is enabled for motion detect alarms in Main Menu > STORAGE > SCH		event occurs, the system activates the peripheral alarm devices
Latch       the external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 0 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds. If you enter 0, there will be no delay.         Send Email       Select the Send Email check box to enable the system to send an email notification when an alarm event occurs.         Image: Select the Channel(s) that you want to record. The selected channel(s) starts recording after an alarm event occurs.         Record Channel       Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected channel(s) starts recording after an alarm event occurs.         Image: NOTE       The recording for intelligence event and auto recording function must be enabled. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."         Click Setting to display the PTZ interface.       Enable PTZ activation function. For each PTZ camera, select the preset that you want to be called when an alarm event occurs.         PTZ       NOTE         Motion Detect can only activate PTZ preset.         Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel.         Image: NOTE         Post Record       Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel.         Image: NOTE       To use this function, make sure the following settings are configured:         Select the Snapshot function is enabled for motion detect alarms in Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot.         Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.         Select the check box to		connected to the selected output port.
Latch       to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds. If you enter 0, there will be no delay.         Select the Send Email check box to enable the system to send an email notification when an alarm event occurs.         Image: Select the Send Email check box to enable the system to send an email notification when an alarm event occurs.         Image: Select the Channel(s) that you want to record. The selected channel(s) starts recording after an alarm event occurs.         Image: NOTE         Record Channel         Select the channel(s) that you want to recording function must be enabled. For details, see "5.14.9 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."         Click Setting to display the PTZ interface.         Enable PTZ       Click Setting to display the PTZ interface.         Enable PTZ activation function. For each PTZ camera, select the preset that you want to be called when an alarm event occurs.         Image: NOTE       Motion Detect can only activate PTZ preset.         Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.         Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel.         Image: NOTE       NOTE         Select the Snapshot function is enabled for motion detect alarms in Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot.         Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.         Select the check box		Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after
bit 0 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds. If you enter 0, there will be no delay.         Select the Send Email check box to enable the system to send an email notification when an alarm event occurs.         Send Email       Select the Channel(s) that you want to record. The selected channel(s) starts recording after an alarm event occurs.         Record Channel       Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected channel(s) starts recording after an alarm event occurs.         PTZ       Select the channel(s) that you want to record ing function must be enabled. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."         Click Setting to display the PTZ interface.       Enable PTZ activation function. For each PTZ camera, select the preset that you want to be called when an alarm event occurs.         Image: NOTE       Motion Detect can only activate PTZ preset.         Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.         Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel.         Image: NOTE         To use this function, make sure the following settings are configured:         Snapshot       The snapshot function is enabled for motion detect alarms in Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot.         Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.       Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.         Select t	Latab	the external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 0 seconds
Send Email       Select the Send Email check box to enable the system to send an email notification when an alarm event occurs.         Send Email       NOTE         To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in Main Menu > NETWORK > EMAIL.         Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected channel(s) starts recording after an alarm event occurs.         Image: NoTE         The recording for intelligence event and auto recording function must be enabled. For details, see "5.14.9 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."         Click Setting to display the PTZ interface.         Enable PTZ activation function. For each PTZ camera, select the preset that you want to be called when an alarm event occurs.         Image: NOTE         Motion Detect can only activate PTZ preset.         Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel.         Image: NOTE         Motion Detect can only activate PTZ preset.         Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel.         Image: NOTE         So use conds, and the default value is 10 seconds.         Select the Snapshot function is enabled for motion detect alarms in Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot.         Select Main Menu > CAMERA > ENCODE > Snapshot, in the Mode list, select Event.         Buzzer       Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.         Select the check box	Laich	to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds. If you enter 0,
Send Email       email notification when an alarm event occurs.         Send Email       NOTE         To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in         Main Menu > NETWORK > EMAIL.         Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected channel(s) starts recording after an alarm event occurs.         Image: the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected channel(s) starts recording after an alarm event occurs.         Image: the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected channel(s) starts recording after an alarm event occurs.         Image: the channel the chann		there will be no delay.
Send Email       Image: Note To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in Main Menu > NETWORK > EMAIL.         Record Channel       Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected channel(s) starts recording after an alarm event occurs.         Image: Note The recording for intelligence event and auto recording function must be enabled. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."         Click Setting to display the PTZ interface.         Enable PTZ activation function. For each PTZ camera, select the preset that you want to be called when an alarm event occurs.         Image: Note The recording after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.         Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel.         Image: Note To use this function, make sure the following settings are configured:         Snapshot       Select the Check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.         Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.         Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.         Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.         Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.         Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.         Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.         Select the check box to activate a buzzer nore a local alarm log. <td></td> <td>Select the Send Email check box to enable the system to send an</td>		Select the Send Email check box to enable the system to send an
To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in Main Menu > NETWORK > EMAIL.         Record Channel       Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected channel(s) starts recording after an alarm event occurs.         Image: NoTE       The recording for intelligence event and auto recording function must be enabled. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."         Click Setting to display the PTZ interface.       Enable PTZ activation function. For each PTZ camera, select the preset that you want to be called when an alarm event occurs.         Image: NOTE       Motion Detect can only activate PTZ preset.         Post Record       Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.         Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel.       NOTE         NOTE       To use this function, make sure the following settings are configured:         • The snapshot function is enabled for motion detect alarms in Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot.         • Select Main Menu > CAMERA > ENCODE > Snapshot, in the Mode list, select Event.         Buzzer       Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.         Log       Select to enable audio broadcast/voice prompts in response to a		email notification when an alarm event occurs.
Main Menu > NETWORK > EMAIL.           Record Channel         Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected channel(s) starts recording after an alarm event occurs.           Image: NoTE         NoTE           The recording for intelligence event and auto recording function must be enabled. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."           PTZ         Click Setting to display the PTZ interface.           Enable PTZ activation function. For each PTZ camera, select the preset that you want to be called when an alarm event occurs.           Image: NOTE           Motion Detect can only activate PTZ preset.           Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.           Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel.           Image: NOTE           Select the Snapshot function is enabled for motion detect alarms in Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot.           Select Main Menu > CAMERA > ENCODE > Snapshot.           Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.           Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.           Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log.	Send Email	NOTE NOTE
Record Channel       Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected channel(s) starts recording after an alarm event occurs.         Image: NoTE       The recording for intelligence event and auto recording function must be enabled. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."         PTZ       Click Setting to display the PTZ interface.         Enable PTZ activation function. For each PTZ camera, select the preset that you want to be called when an alarm event occurs.         Image: NoTE         Motion Detect can only activate PTZ preset.         Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.         Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel.         Image: NOTE         To use this function, make sure the following settings are configured:         • The snapshot function is enabled for motion detect alarms in Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot.         • Select Main Menu > CAMERA > ENCODE > Snapshot, in the Mode list, select Event.         Buzzer       Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.         Log       Select to enable audio broadcast/voice prompts in response to a		To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in
Record Channel       channel(s) starts recording after an alarm event occurs.         Image: NOTE       The recording for intelligence event and auto recording function must be enabled. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."         PTZ       Click Setting to display the PTZ interface.         Enable PTZ activation function. For each PTZ camera, select the preset that you want to be called when an alarm event occurs.         Image: NOTE         Motion Detect can only activate PTZ preset.         Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.         Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel.         Image: NoTE         Snapshot         Select the Snapshot function is enabled for motion detect alarms in Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot.         Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.         Log       Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.		Main Menu > NETWORK > EMAIL.
Record Channel       Image: NOTE         The recording for intelligence event and auto recording function must be enabled. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."         PTZ       Click Setting to display the PTZ interface.         Enable PTZ activation function. For each PTZ camera, select the preset that you want to be called when an alarm event occurs.         Image: NOTE         Motion Detect can only activate PTZ preset.         Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.         Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel.         Image: NOTE         Snapshot         Select the Snapshot function is enabled for motion detect alarms in Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot.         Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.         Log       Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.		Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected
Record Channel       The recording for intelligence event and auto recording function must be enabled. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."         PTZ       Click Setting to display the PTZ interface. Enable PTZ activation function. For each PTZ camera, select the preset that you want to be called when an alarm event occurs.         PTZ       Motion Detect can only activate PTZ preset.         Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.         Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel.         NOTE         NOTE         Snapshot         Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel.         NOTE         To use this function, make sure the following settings are configured:         • The snapshot function is enabled for motion detect alarms in Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot.         • Select Main Menu > CAMERA > ENCODE > Snapshot, in the Mode list, select Event.         Buzzer       Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.         Log       Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log.		channel(s) starts recording after an alarm event occurs.
The recording for intelligence event and auto recording function         must be enabled. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded         Video Storage Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."         Click Setting to display the PTZ interface.         Enable PTZ activation function. For each PTZ camera, select the         preset that you want to be called when an alarm event occurs.         Image: NoTE         Motion Detect can only activate PTZ preset.         Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording         after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to         300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.         Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected         channel.         Image: NOTE         NOTE         To use this function, make sure the following settings are         configured:         • The snapshot function is enabled for motion detect alarms in         Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot.         • Select Main Menu > CAMERA > ENCODE > Snapshot, in         the Mode list, select Event.         Buzzer       Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.         Log       Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm         log.       Select to enable audio broadcast/voice prompts in response to a <td>Depart Channel</td> <td>NOTE NOTE</td>	Depart Channel	NOTE NOTE
Video Storage Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."         Click Setting to display the PTZ interface.         Enable PTZ activation function. For each PTZ camera, select the preset that you want to be called when an alarm event occurs.         NOTE         Motion Detect can only activate PTZ preset.         Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.         Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel.         NOTE         NOTE         Snapshot         Select Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot.         Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.         Log         Select to enable audio broadcast/voice prompts in response to a	Record Channel	The recording for intelligence event and auto recording function
Click Setting to display the PTZ interface.         Enable PTZ activation function. For each PTZ camera, select the preset that you want to be called when an alarm event occurs.         Image: NoTE         Motion Detect can only activate PTZ preset.         Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.         Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel.         Image: NOTE         Snapshot         Snapshot         Select the Snapshot function is enabled for motion detect alarms in Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot.         Select Main Menu > CAMERA > ENCODE > Snapshot, in the Mode list, select Event.         Buzzer       Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.         Log       Select to enable audio broadcast/voice promots in response to a		must be enabled. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded
PTZ       Enable PTZ activation function. For each PTZ camera, select the preset that you want to be called when an alarm event occurs.         Image: Display the image: Displ		Video Storage Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."
PTZ       preset that you want to be called when an alarm event occurs.         Image: Note Note Note Note Note Note Note Note		Click <b>Setting</b> to display the PTZ interface.
Image: Note Note Note Note         Motion Detect can only activate PTZ preset.         Post Record       Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.         Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel.       Image: Note Note Note Note Note Note Note Note		Enable PTZ activation function. For each PTZ camera, select the
Motion Detect can only activate PTZ preset.         Post Record       Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.         Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel.       Image: NoTE         NOTE       NOTE         To use this function, make sure the following settings are configured:       Image: NoTE         Snapshot       The snapshot function is enabled for motion detect alarms in Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot.         Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.       Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log.	PTZ	preset that you want to be called when an alarm event occurs.
Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.         Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel.         NOTE         To use this function, make sure the following settings are configured:         The snapshot function is enabled for motion detect alarms in Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot.         Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.         Log       Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log.		NOTE NOTE
Post Record       after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.         Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel.       Image: Configured is in the image is in the image.		Motion Detect can only activate PTZ preset.
300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.         Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel.         Image: NOTE         To use this function, make sure the following settings are configured:         • The snapshot function is enabled for motion detect alarms in Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot.         • Select Main Menu > CAMERA > ENCODE > Snapshot, in the Mode list, select Event.         Buzzer       Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.         Log       Select to enable audio broadcast/voice promots in response to a		Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording
Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel.         Image: NoTE         To use this function, make sure the following settings are configured:         • The snapshot function is enabled for motion detect alarms in Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot.         • Select Main Menu > CAMERA > ENCODE > Snapshot, in the Mode list, select Event.         Buzzer       Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.         Log       Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log.	Post Record	after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to
snapshot       channel.         Snapshot       To use this function, make sure the following settings are configured:         • The snapshot function is enabled for motion detect alarms in Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot.         • Select Main Menu > CAMERA > ENCODE > Snapshot, in the Mode list, select Event.         Buzzer       Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.         Log       Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log.         Select to enable audio broadcast/voice prompts in response to a		300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.
Snapshot       Image: Note that the second sec		Select the <b>Snapshot</b> check box to take a snapshot of the selected
Snapshot       To use this function, make sure the following settings are configured:         • The snapshot function is enabled for motion detect alarms in Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot.         • Select Main Menu > CAMERA > ENCODE > Snapshot, in the Mode list, select Event.         Buzzer       Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.         Log       Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log.         Select to enable audio broadcast/voice prompts in response to a		channel.
Snapshot       configured:         • The snapshot function is enabled for motion detect alarms in         Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot.         • Select Main Menu > CAMERA > ENCODE > Snapshot, in         the Mode list, select Event.         Buzzer       Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.         Log       Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log.         Select to enable audio broadcast/voice prompts in response to a		NOTE NOTE
<ul> <li>The snapshot function is enabled for motion detect alarms in Main Menu &gt; STORAGE &gt; SCHEDULE &gt; Snapshot.</li> <li>Select Main Menu &gt; CAMERA &gt; ENCODE &gt; Snapshot, in the Mode list, select Event.</li> <li>Buzzer Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.</li> <li>Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log.</li> <li>Select to enable audio broadcast/voice prompts in response to a</li> </ul>		To use this function, make sure the following settings are
Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot.         • Select Main Menu > CAMERA > ENCODE > Snapshot, in the Mode list, select Event.         Buzzer       Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.         Log       Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log.         Select to enable audio broadcast/voice prompts in response to a	Snapshot	configured:
Select Main Menu > CAMERA > ENCODE > Snapshot, in the Mode list, select Event.     Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.     Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log.     Select to enable audio broadcast/voice prompts in response to a		• The snapshot function is enabled for motion detect alarms in
the Mode list, select Event.         Buzzer       Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.         Log       Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log.         Select to enable audio broadcast/voice prompts in response to a		Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot.
Buzzer       Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.         Log       Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log.         Select to enable audio broadcast/voice prompts in response to a		• Select Main Menu > CAMERA > ENCODE > Snapshot, in
Log Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log. Select to enable audio broadcast/voice prompts in response to a		the <b>Mode</b> list, select <b>Event</b> .
Log log. Select to enable audio broadcast/voice prompts in response to a	Buzzer	Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.
Iog.           Select to enable audio broadcast/voice prompts in response to a	Log	Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm
Select to enable audio broadcast/voice prompts in response to a	L09	log.
Voice Prompts		Select to enable audio broadcast/voice prompts in response to a
human face detection event.	Voice Prompts	beleet to chable addio broadcast voice prompts in response to a

 $\underline{Step \ 3} \quad Click \ \textbf{Apply} \ to \ complete \ the \ settings.$ 

## 5.10.3.2 Searching for Detected Faces

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > FACE DETECT > SMART SEARCH. The SMART SEARCH interface is displayed. See Figure 5-128.

🚊 FACE DETECT							
> SMART SEARCH	Human Face						
PARAMETERS	Begin Time	2017 - 12 - 07	00 : 00 : 00	End Time	2017 - 12 - 08	00 : 00 : 00	
						Search	

Figure 5-128

- <u>Step 2</u> In the **Begin Time** box and **End Time** box, enter the time.
- Step 3 Click Search.

The faces searched in the defined period display. See Figure 5-129.

🚊 FACE DETECT				
> SMART SEARCH	Human Face			
PARAMETERS	Begin Time 20	00 -01 -12 00 :00 :00	End Time 2018 - 0	1 - 13 00 : 00 : 00 Search
	2017-12-08 18-48:35 Sex Age:- Constant Glasses:- Attractive- Face Detect	2017-12-05 11:34:45 Sex- Age- Emotion- Attractive- Face Detect	2017-12-01 15:43:56 Sex- Age- Emotion:- Glasses:- Attractive:- Face Detect	2017-12-01 15:43:55 Age:- Age:- Glasses:- Attractive:- Face Detect
	2017-11-15 09-08:49 Sex:- Age:- Classes:- Attractive:- Face Detect	2017-11-15 09:08:42 Sex- Age- Classes- Attractive- Face Detect	2017-11-15 09:08:33 Sex:- Age:- Glasses:- Attractive:- Face Detect	2017-11-15 09:08:10 Age:- Age:- Glasses:- Glasses:- Face Detect
	2017-11-15 09-08:03 Sex:- Age:- Emotion- Glasses:- Attractive- Face Detect	2017-11-15 09:08:01 Sex- Age- Emotion- Glasses:- Attractive- Face Detect	2000-01-12 00:44 38 Age - Emotion:- Glasses:- Attractive - Face Detect	
				Export

Figure 5-129

# 5.10.4 System Events

You can configure the alarm output for three types of system event (HDD, Network, and User). When there is an abnormal system event occurs, the system activates alarms in the way that you configure in this section.

## 5.10.4.1 Configuring HDD Event Settings

<u>Step 1</u> Select **Main Menu > ALARM > ABNORMITY > HDD**. The **HDD** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-130.

🔔 ALARM						LIVE	
ALARM INFO	HDD Ne	twork	User	Device			
ALARM INPUT	Event Type	No HDD					
	Enable						
VIDEO DETECT							
> ABNORMALITY					10		
	Alarm Out	Setting		Latch	10	Sec.	
	Show Message	Alarm Upload		Send Email			
	🗹 Buzzer	🔽 Log					
	Voice Prompts	None					
					Appl	y I	Back

Figure 5-130

Stop 2	Configure the	sottings for the		See Table 5-12
<u>Step z</u>	Configure the	settings for the	HDD event.	See Table 5-42.

Parameter	Description				
Event Type	In the Event Type list, select No HDD, HDD Error, or HDD No Space				
Event Type	as the event type.				
Enable	Enable or disable the HDD event detection function.				
	Click <b>Setting</b> to display setting interface.				
	General Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the alarm devices				
	connected to the selected output port.				
Alarm Out	• External Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the connected				
	alarm box.				
	Wireless Siren: Enable alarm activation through devices				
	connected by USB gateway or camera gateway.				
	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after the				
Latch	external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300				
	seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.				
Show Massaga	Select the Show Message check box to enable a pop-up message in				
Show Message	your local host PC.				
	Select the Alarm Upload check box to enable the system to upload the				
Alarm Upload	alarm signal to the network (including alarm center) when an alarm				
	event occurs.				

Parameter	Description		
	Select the Send Email check box to enable the system to send an		
	email notification when an alarm event occurs.		
Send Email	NOTE NOTE		
	To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in <b>Main</b>		
	Menu > NETWORK > EMAIL.		
Buzzer	Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.		
Log	Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log.		
Vaias Dramata	Select to enable audio broadcast/voice prompts in response to a HDD		
Voice Prompts	alarm event.		

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

## 5.10.4.2 Configuring Network Event Settings

#### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ALARM > ABNORMITY > Network.

The Network interface is displayed. See Figure 5-131.

🔔 ALARM					L	IVE	💄 🕞 🗸 🛤
ALARM INFO	HDD	Network	User	Device			
ALARM INPUT	Event Type	Net Discon	nection 🔹				
ALARM OUTPUT	Enable						
VIDEO DETECT							
> ABNORMALITY	Alarma Out	Cotting		Latch	10		
	Alarm Out	Setting			10	Sec.	
	Show Messag	e		Send Email			
	Record Chanr	nel <b>1</b> 2					
	Buzzer	🔽 Log		Post Record	10	Sec.	
	Voice Prompt	s None					
					Apply	/	Back
					- Appi		

Figure 5-131

Step 2 Conf	igure the settings	for the Network	event. See Table 5-43	3.
-------------	--------------------	-----------------	-----------------------	----

Parameter	Description
Event Type	In the Event Type list, select Net Disconnection, IP Conflicted, or
Event Type	MAC Conflicted as the event type.
Enable	Enable or disable the Network event detection function.

Parameter	Description		
	Click <b>Setting</b> to display setting interface.		
	General Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the alarm devices		
	connected to the selected output port.		
Alarm Out	<ul> <li>External Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the connected alarm box.</li> </ul>		
	Wireless Siren: Enable alarm activation through devices		
	connected by USB gateway or camera gateway.		
	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after the		
Latch	external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300		
	seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.		
Show Message	Select the <b>Show Message</b> check box to enable a pop-up message in		
Show Message	your local host PC.		
	Select the Send Email check box to enable the system to send an		
	email notification when an alarm event occurs.		
Send Email	NOTE NOTE		
	To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in Main		
	Menu > NETWORK > EMAIL.		
Buzzer	Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.		
Log	Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log.		
Voice Prompts	Select to enable audio broadcast/voice prompts in response to a		
	network alarm event.		

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

## 5.10.4.3 Configuring User Event Settings

#### Step 1 Select Main Menu > ALARM > ABNORMITY > User.

The **User** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-132.

🔔 ALARM					
ALARM INFO	HDD	Network	User	Device	
ALARM INPUT	Event Type	Illegal Login		Attempt(s)	5
ALARM OUTPUT	Enable			Lock Time	5 Min.
VIDEO DETECT					
> ABNORMALITY	Alarm Out	Setting		Latch	10 Sec.
	Buzzer	Log		Send Email	
	Voice Pror	npts None			
					Apply Back

Figure 5-132

Ctop 2	Configura the	aattinga far tha	Lloor overt	See Table E 11
<u>Step Z</u>	Conligure the	settings for the	User event.	See Table 5-44.

Parameter	Description		
Event Type	In the Event Type list, select Illegal Login.		
	Enable the user error detection function.		
Enable	If you do not enable this function, there will be no limit for wrong		
	password entry and the account cannot be locked because of the		
	wrong password.		
Attempt(s)	Set the maximum number of allowable wrong password entries. The		
Allempi(s)	account will be locked after your entries exceed the maximum number.		
Lock Time	Set how long the account is locked for. The value ranges from 1 minute		
LOCK TIME	to 60 minutes.		
	Click <b>Setting</b> to display setting interface.		
	General Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the alarm devices		
	connected to the selected output port.		
Alarm Out	External Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the connected		
	alarm box.		
	Wireless Siren: Enable alarm activation through devices		
	connected by USB gateway or camera gateway.		
	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after the		
Latch	external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300		
	seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.		

Parameter	Description	
	Select the Send Email check box to enable the system to send an	
Send Email	email notification when an alarm event occurs.	
	NOTE NOTE	
	To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in <b>Main</b>	
	Menu > NETWORK > EMAIL.	
Buzzer	Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.	
Log	Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log.	
Voice Dremete	Select to enable audio broadcast/voice prompts in response to a user	
Voice Prompts	account alarm event.	

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

## 5.10.4.4 Configuring Device Event Settings

#### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ALARM > ABNORMITY > Device.

The **Device** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-133.

ALARM INFO     HDD     Network     User     Device       ALARM INPUT     Event Type     High Temperature     Alarm Name     Case Temp       ALARM OUTPUT     Enable     Max Temperature     60 °C       VIDEO DETECT     VIDEO DETECT     VIDEO DETECT     VIDEO DETECT
ALARM OUTPUT     Enable     Max Temperature     60     °C
VIDEO DETECT
ABNORMALITY     Alarm Out     Setting     Latch     10     Sec.
Show Message Send Email
Voice Prompts None v
Apply Back

Figure 5-133

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the device ever	nt. See Table 5-45.
--	---------------------

Parameter	Description
Event Type	In the Event Type list, select High Temperature or Fan Speed
Event Type	Abnormal.
Alarm Name	Enter the name for the event type.
Enable	Enable the device event detection function.

Parameter	Description		
Max Temperature	In the Max Temperature box, enter the max temperature value.		
	Click <b>Setting</b> to display setting interface.		
	General Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the alarm devices		
	connected to the selected output port.		
Alarm Out	External Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the connected		
	alarm box.		
	Wireless Siren: Enable alarm activation through devices		
	connected by USB gateway or camera gateway.		
	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after the		
Latch	external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300		
	seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.		
	Select the Send Email check box to enable the system to send an		
	email notification when an alarm event occurs.		
Send Email	D NOTE		
	To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in Main		
	Menu > NETWORK > EMAIL.		
Buzzer	Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.		
Log	Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log.		
Voice Prompts	Select to enable audio broadcast/voice prompts in response to a		
	Device alarm event.		

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

## 5.10.5 Alarm Input Settings

Connect the alarm input and output ports by referring to "4.3 Connecting to Alarm Input and Output." You can configure the alarm settings for each channel individually or apply the settings to all channels and then save the settings.

#### 5.10.5.1 Configuring Local Alarms

You can connect the alarm device to the alarm input port of the Device. When the alarm is activated on the alarm device, the alarm information will be uploaded to the Device, and then the Device outputs the local alarms in the way that you configure in this section.

Step 1 Select Main Menu > ALARM > ALARM INPUT > Local.

The Local interface is displayed. See Figure 5-134.

🔔 ALARM				
ALARM INFO	Local Ala	arm Box IPC Ext	IPC Offline	Ext. Alarm
ALARM INPUT     ALARM OUTPUT	Alarm In Enable	1 •	Alarm Name Type	Alarm In1 NO v
VIDEO DETECT ABNORMALITY	Period Alarm Out Show Message Record Channel PTZ Tour Snapshot Video Matrix Voice Prompts	Setting Setting Alarm Upload 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 Setting 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 Buzzer None	Post Record 8 9 10 11 12 7 8 9 10 11 12 7	5 Sec. 10 Sec. 3 14 15 16 10 Sec. 13 14 15 16 13 14 15 16 13 14 15 16
	Default Co	ру		Apply Back

Figure 5-134

010	0 1 1			O T I I E 40
Step 2	Configure the	settings for the	local alarms.	See Table 5-46.

Parameter	Description
Alarm In	Select the channel number.
Alarm Name	Enter the customized alarm name.
Enable	Enable or disable the local alarm function.
Туре	In the <b>Type</b> list, select <b>NO</b> or select <b>NC</b> as the voltage output type.
Period	Click <b>Setting</b> to display setting interface. Define a period during which the motion detection is active. For details, see "Setting Motion Detection Period" section in "5.10.1.1 Configuring Motion Detect Settings."
Anti-Dither	Configure the event detection lasting time. The system records only one event during this period. The value ranges from 5 seconds to 600 seconds.
Alarm Out	<ul> <li>Click Setting to display setting interface.</li> <li>General Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the alarm devices connected to the selected output port.</li> <li>External Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the connected alarm box.</li> <li>Wireless Siren: Enable alarm activation through devices connected by USB gateway or camera gateway.</li> </ul>
Latch	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after the external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 0 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.

Parameter	Description				
Show Message	Select the <b>Show Message</b> check box to enable a pop-up message in				
	your local host PC.				
	Select the <b>Alarm Upload</b> check box to enable the system to upload the				
Alarm Upload	alarm signal to the network (including alarm center) when an alarm				
	event occurs.				
	Select the <b>Send Email</b> check box to enable the system to send an				
	email notification when an alarm event occurs.				
Send Email					
	To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in <b>Main</b>				
	Menu > NETWORK > EMAIL.				
	Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected channel(s)				
	starts recording after an alarm event occurs.				
Record Channel	NOTE NOTE				
	The recording for alarm and auto snapshot must be enabled. For				
	details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule"				
	and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."				
	Click <b>Setting</b> to display the PTZ interface.				
PTZ	Enable PTZ activation function. For each PTZ camera, select the				
	preset that you want to be called when an alarm event occurs.				
	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording after				
Post Record	the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300				
	seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.				
	Select the <b>Tour</b> check box to enable a tour of the selected channels.				
_					
Tour	To use this function, make sure the tour is enabled and configured in				
	Main Menu > DISPLAY > TOUR.				
	Select the <b>Snapshot</b> check box to take a snapshot of the selected				
	channel.				
	NOTE				
•	To use this function, make sure the following settings are configured:				
Snapshot	• The snapshot function is enabled for motion detect alarms in <b>Main</b>				
	Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot.				
	• Select Main Menu > CAMERA > ENCODE > Snapshot, in the				
	Mode list, select Event.				
	Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event				
	occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in "Main				
Video Matrix	Menu > DISPLAY > TOUR."				
	Not all models support this function.				
Buzzer	Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.				
Log	Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log.				
Voice Prompts	Select to enable audio broadcast/voice prompts in response to a local				
-	alarm event.				

 $\underline{Step \ 3} \quad Click \ \textbf{Apply} \ to \ complete \ the \ settings.$ 

- Click **Default** to restore the default setting.
- Click **Copy**, in the **Copy** dialog box, select the additional channel(s) that you want to copy the local alarm settings to, and then click **Apply**.

## 5.10.5.2 Configuring Alarms from Alarm Box

You can connect the alarm box to the RS485 port of the Device. When the alarm is detected by the alarm box, the alarm information will be uploaded to the Device, and then the Device outputs the alarms in the way that you configure in this section.

```
<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ALARM > ALARM INPUT > Alarm Box.
The Alarm Box interface is displayed. See Figure 5-135
```

							L	IVE	<b>1</b> -	<b>P</b> Q
	ALARM INFO	Local	Alarm Box	IPC Ext		PC Offline	Ext Ala			
>	ALARM INPUT	Alarm Box	4			Status				
	ALARM OUTPUT	Alarm In	1		<ul> <li>Alarr</li> </ul>	ma	Alarm In49			
	VIDEO DETECT	Enable			Туре		NO 🔻			
	ABNORMALITY	Period	Setti	a						
		Alarm Out	Setti		Latcl	ь Г	10	Sec.		
		Show Messa		.9		 Send Email				
		🖂 Record Cha								
		PTZ	Setti	ng	Post	Record	10	Sec.		
		Tour								
		Snapshot								
		Video Matrix	k 🗌 Buzz	zer	<u>ا</u> ي	_og				
		🗌 Voice Prom	ots None							
		Default					Appl	/	Back	

Figure 5-135

- <u>Step 2</u> In the **Alarm Box** list, select the alarm box number corresponding to the address number configured by the DIP switch on the Alarm Box.
- <u>Step 3</u> In the **Alarm In** list, select the alarm input port on the Alarm Box.
- <u>Step 4</u> Configure the settings for other parameters of the Alarm Box. For details, see Table 5-46.
- <u>Step 5</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

Click **Default** to restore the default setting.

5.10.5.3 Configuring Alarms from External IP Cameras

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ALARM > ALARM INPUT > IPC Ext.

	ALARM					LIVE	L 🗗 🗸 🔛
AL	_ARM INFO	Local /	Alarm Box	IPC Ext II	IPC Offline	Ext. Alarm	
> AL	ARM INPUT	Channel	13	- Alar	rm Name Ala	arm In13	
AL	_ARM OUTPUT	Enable		Туре			
VI	DEO DETECT						
AE	BNORMALITY	Period	Setting	Anti	i-Dither 5	Sec.	
		Alarm Out	Setting	Latc	ch 10	Sec.	
		Show Message	🗹 Alarm Uploa	d 🗌 🤅	Send Email		
		Record Channel					
		PTZ	Setting	Post	st Record 10	Sec.	
		Tour					
		Snapshot					
		Video Matrix	Buzzer		Log		
		Voice Prompts	None				
		Default				Analy	Deek
		Default C	Copy Refresh			Apply	Back

The IPC Ext interface is displayed. See Figure 5-136.

Figure 5-136

Step 2 Configure the alarm input settings from the external IPC. For details, see Table 5-46.

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

- Click **Default** to restore the default setting.
- Click **Copy** to copy the settings to other channels.
- Click Refresh to refresh configured settings.

#### 5.10.5.4 Configuring Alarms for IP Camera Offline

You can configure the alarm settings for the situation when the IP camera is offline.

Step 1 Select Main Menu > ALARM > ALARM INPUT > IPC Offline.

The IPC Offline interface is displayed. See Figure 5-137.

🔔 ALARM					L	IVE	
ALARM INFO	Local	Alarm Box	IPC Ext	IPC Offline	Ext. Ala	arm	
> ALARM INPUT	Channel	13					
ALARM OUTPUT	Enable						
VIDEO DETECT							
ABNORMALITY	Alarm Out	Setting		Latch	10	Sec.	
					10	Sec.	
	Show Mess		Upload	Send Email			
	Record Ch						
	PTZ	Setting		Post Record	10	Sec.	
	🗌 Tour						
	Snapshot						
	Video Matr	ix 🗌 Buzzer		🗹 Log			
	🗌 Voice Pron	npts None					
	Default	Сору			Appl	У	Back

Figure 5-137

- Step 2 Configure the alarm input settings from the external IPC. For details, see Table 5-46.
- <u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.
  - - Click **Default** to restore the default setting.
    - Click **Copy** to copy the settings to other channels.

# 5.10.5.5 Configuring Alarms from External Devices

#### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ALARM > ALARM INPUT > Ext. Alarm.

The Ext. Alarm interface is displayed. See Figure 5-138.

🔔 ALARM					LIV	/E 💄 🗗 🗸 🖽
ALARM INFO	Local	Alarm Box	IPC Ext	IPC C	Offline Ext Aları	m
> ALARM INPUT	Channel	All				
ALARM OUTPUT	2 Enabl	e Setting Status	Access Type	Access Point	Туре	Name
VIDEO DETECT			Camera	Chn6-Air	HDCVI Voltage Alarm	
ABNORMALITY		<b>e</b> •	Camera	Chn5-Air	HDCVI Voltage Alarm	Chn5-HDCVI
					Apply	Back

Figure 5-138

<u>Step 2</u> In the **Channel** list, select a channel or **all**.

Step 3 Click

The Setting interface is displayed. See Figure 5-139.

Setting				
Access Type Type	Camera Gateway HDCVI Voltage Alarm	Access Point Name	Chn2-Airfly Chn2-HDCVI Voltage A	
Period Alarm Out	Setting Setting	PTZ Latch	Setting 10	Sec.
Post Record	10 Se	c. Anti-Dither	5	Sec.
Record CH     Snapshot     Tour	12345678 12345678 12345678			
Voice Prompts	None v			
Default			ОК	Back

Figure 5-139

- <u>Step 4</u> Configure the settings for other parameters of the Alarm Box. For details, see Table 5-46.
- $\underline{Step 5}$  Click **OK** to complete the settings.

# 5.10.6 Alarm Output Settings

When the Device activates alarms, the connected alarm device generates alarms in the way that you can configure in this section. You can connect to the output port of the Device or connect wirelessly.

- **Auto**: When an alarm event is triggered on the Device, the connected alarm device generates alarms.
- Manual: The alarm device is forced to keep generating alarms.
- Stop: The alarm output function is not enabled.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ALARM > ALARM OUTPUT > ALARM OUTPUT. The ALARM OUTPUT interface is displayed. See Figure 5-140.

🔔 ALARM		
ALARM INFO	Alarm Output	
ALARM INPUT	General Alarm	
> ALARM OUTPL	JT Alarm Type All 1 2 3 4 5 6	
VIDEO DETEC	Manual OOOOO	
ABNORMALIT	Stop	
	Status	
	Ext. Alarm Alarm Box Alarm Type Auto Manual Stop Status	
	Alarm Release OK	
		Apply Back

Figure 5-140

Step 2 Configure the settings for the alarm output. For details, see Table 5-47.Table 5-46

Parameter		Description		
Alarm Ty		Select alarm type for each alarm output port.		
General Alarm	Status	Indicates the status of each alarm output port.		
	Alarm Box	Select the alarm box number corresponding to the address		
Ext. Alarm	Alanni box	number configured by the DIP switch on the Alarm Box.		
EXI. Alann	Alarm Type	Select the alarm type for each alarm output ports.		
	Status	Indicates the status of each alarm output port.		
Alarm Release		Click OK to clear all alarm output status.		

Table 5-47

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to save the settings.

# 5.11 IoT Function

# 5.11.1 Configuring Sensor Settings

You can connect external sensors wirelessly through the Device with USB gateway or through connecting to a camera gateway. After connection, you can activate alarm events through external sensors.

### 5.11.1.1 Connecting Sensor through Device

### 

Only the Device with USB gateway supports this function.

Step 1 Select Main Menu > IoT > MANAGER > Sensor Pairing.

The Sensor Pairing interface is displayed. See Figure 5-141.

S IoT		
REALTIME DISPLAY	Sensor Pairing Temperature/Hu Wireless Detector Wireless Siren	
SEARCH INFO	Access Type All *	
> MANAGER		
	1 Edit Delete Status Access Type Access Point	Туре
		Add

Figure 5-141

- Step 2 In the Access Type list, select USB Gateway.
- Step 3 Click Add.

The **Add** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-142.

Add		
Access Type	USB Gateway	
Add Way	Pair	Pair
Access Point	USB Gateway-1	
Serial No.		
Name		
Туре		
Class		
Status		
		Back

Figure 5-142

#### Step 4 Click Pair.

The Device starts pairing with the sensor.

After pairing is	completed, se	e Figure 5-143
------------------	---------------	----------------

Add	_	
Access Type	USB Gateway	
Add Way	Pair	Pair
Access Point	USB Gateway-1	
Serial No.	3J01837AAZ00008	
Name	USB-Panic Button-1	
Туре	Panic Button	
Class	Alarm In	
Status	Connected	
		Back

Figure 5-143

<u>Step 5</u> Click **Back** to exit the pairing interface.

The added sensor information is displayed. See Figure 5-144.





	S loT									[		L 🕞 🗸 🔛
	REALTIME DISPLAY	Sen	sor Pairing	, Т	emperature/Hu	Wireless De	tector	Wireles	s Siren			
	SEARCH INFO		Access Typ	e	USB Gateway							
>	MANAGER											
				Edit	Delete	Status	Acce	ss Type	Access F	oint	Туре	
							USB(	Gateway			Panic Butt	
			4									
			Refresh									Add

Figure 5-144

## 5.11.1.2 Connecting Sensor through Camera with Gateway

Only the camera with gateway supports this function.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > IoT > MANAGER > Sensor Pairing.

The **Sensor Pairing** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-145.

	S loT										LIVE	<b>.</b> 0	
	REALTIME DISPLAY	Se	nsor Pairing	Tempe	erature/Hu	Wireless Dete	ector	Wireles	s Siren				
	SEARCH INFO		Access Type	All									
>	MANAGER												
			1	Edit	Delete	Status	Access	s Type	Access P	oint	Туре		
												Add	

Figure 5-145

- <u>Step 2</u> In the Access Type list, select Camera Gateway.
- <u>Step 3</u> In the **Channel** list, select the channel that is connected to the camera.
- Step 4 Click Add.
  - The Add interface is displayed. See Figure 5-146.

Add		
Access Type	Camera Gateway	
Add Way	Pair	Pair
Access Point	Chn2-Air	
Serial No.		
Name		
Туре		
Class		
Status		
		Back

Figure 5-146

Step 5 Click Pair.

The Device starts pairing with the sensor. After pairing is completed, see Figure 5-147.

Add		
Access Type	Camera Gateway	
Add Way	Pair	Pair
Access Point	Chn6-Air	
Serial No.	3J01837AAZ00008	
Name	Chn6-Panic Button-1	
Туре	Panic Button	
Class	Alarm In	
Status	Connected	
		Back

Figure 5-147

<u>Step 6</u> Click **Back** to exit the pairing interface.

The added sensor information is displayed. See Figure 5-148.

			·		U			
Click 🗾 to	o modify th	ne sen	isor name	; click	to de	elete senso	or informat	tion.
🕥 ІоТ							LIVE	90 
REALTIME DISPLAY	Sensor Pairin	g Tem	perature/Hu	Wireless De	tector Wirele	ss Siren		
SEARCH INFO	Access Ty	pe C	amera Gateway		Channel	All		
> MANAGER								
		Edit	Delete	Status	Access Type	Access Point	Туре	
					Camera Gat	Chn2-Airfly	Panic Button	Cł
							Ad	d

Figure 5-148

# 5.11.1.3 Configuring Alarm Linkage

#### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > IoT > MANAGER > Wireless Detector.

🕥 ют					L	IVE 👤 🔁 🗸 📴
REALTIME DISPLAY	Sensor Pairing	Temperature/Hu	Wireless Dete	ector Wireless Si	ren	
SEARCH INFO	Access Type	All				
> MANAGER						
	1 Enat	le Setting Status	Access Type Camera Gat	Access Point Chn2-Airfly	Type Panic Button	Name Chn2-Panic Bu
		<b>⇔</b>	Camera Gat	Ghinz-Air iiy		
					Apply	Back

The Wireless Detector interface is displayed. See Figure 5-149.

Figure 5-149



Step 3 Click

The Setting interface is displayed. See Figure 5-139.

Setting				
Access Type	Camera Gateway	Access Point	Chn2-Airfly	
Туре	Panic Button	Name	Chn2-Panic Button-1	
Period Alarm Out	Setting Setting	PTZ Latch	Setting 10	Sec.
Post Record	s	ec. Anti-Dither	5	Sec.
Record CH				
Snapshot				
Tour				
Voice Prompts	None 🔻			
More Setting	Setting			
Default			OK	Back

Figure 5-150

Step 4 Configure the settings for alarm linkage. For details, see Table 5-48.



Parameter	Description
Name	Enter the customized alarm name.
Period	Click <b>Setting</b> to display setting interface. Define a period during which the motion detection is active. For details, see "Setting Motion Detection Period" section in "5.10.1.1 Configuring Motion Detect Settings."
PTZ	Click <b>Setting</b> to display the PTZ interface. Enable PTZ activation function. For each PTZ camera, select the preset that you want to be called when an alarm event occurs.
Alarm Out	<ul> <li>Click Setting to display setting interface.</li> <li>General Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the alarm devices connected to the selected output port.</li> <li>External Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the connected alarm box.</li> <li>Wireless Siren: Enable alarm activation through devices connected by USB gateway or camera gateway.</li> </ul>
Latch	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after the external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 0 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.
Post Record	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.
Anti-Dither	Configure the event detection lasting time. The system records only one event during this period. The value ranges from 5 seconds to 600 seconds.
Record Channel	<ul> <li>Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected channel(s) starts recording after an alarm event occurs.</li> <li>NOTE</li> <li>The recording for alarm and auto snapshot must be enabled. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."</li> </ul>
Snapshot	<ul> <li>Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel.</li> <li>NOTE</li> <li>To use this function, make sure the following settings are configured:</li> <li>The snapshot function is enabled for motion detect alarms in Main Menu &gt; STORAGE &gt; SCHEDULE &gt; Snapshot.</li> <li>Select Main Menu &gt; CAMERA &gt; ENCODE &gt; Snapshot, in the Mode list, select Event.</li> </ul>
Tour	Select the <b>Tour</b> check box to enable a tour of the selected channels. NOTE To use this function, make sure the tour is enabled and configured in <b>Main Menu &gt; DISPLAY &gt; TOUR</b> .
Voice Prompts	Select to enable audio broadcast/voice prompts in response to a local alarm event.

Parameter	Description					
More Setting	<ul> <li>Show Message: Select the Show Message check box to enable a pop-up message in your local host PC.</li> <li>Buzzer: Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.</li> <li>Video Matrix: Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in "Main Menu &gt; DISPLAY &gt; TOUR."</li> <li>NOTE</li> <li>NOTE</li> <li>Not all models support this function.</li> <li>Send Email: Enable the system to send an email notification when an alarm event occurs.</li> <li>NOTE</li> <li>To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in Main Menu &gt; NETWORK &gt; EMAIL.</li> <li>Log: Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log</li> </ul>					
Table 5-48						

<u>Step 5</u> Click **OK** to save the settings.

<u>Step 6</u> On the **Wireless Detector** interface, click **Apply** to complete the settings.

## 5.11.2 Configuring Temperature and Humidity Camera

You can view, search and export the temperature and humidity data of camera with such sensors and configure the alarm event settings.

To use this function, please make sure there is at least one camera with temperature and humidity sensor has been connected to the Device.

#### 5.11.2.1 Enabling Detecting Function

You should enable the IoT function the first time when you enter this interface.

<u>Step 1</u> On the main menu, click **IoT > MANAGER > Temperature/Humidity**.

The **Temperature/Humidity** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-151.
🕥 IoT						
REALTIME DISPLAY	Sensor Pairin	g Tempera	ture/Hu V	Vireless Detector	Wireless Siren	
SEARCH INFO	2	Enable	Setting	Access Point	Туре	Detect Position Nam
> MANAGER			¢	Chn 6	Temperature	Chn6-Temperature-
			۵	Chn 6	Humidity	Chn6-Humidity-1

Figure 5-151



S IoT						
REALTIME DISPLAY	Sensor Pairing	J Temperat	ure/Hu	Wireless Detector	Wireless Siren	
SEARCH INFO	2	Enable	Setting	Access Point	Туре	Detect Position Nam
> MANAGER			\$	Chn 6	Temperature	Chn6-Temperature-
	2					Chn6-Humidity-1



The Device starts detecting the temperature and humidity data from the camera and display on the **Realtime Display** interface.

# 5.11.2.2 Viewing Temperature and Humidity Data

You can view the temperature and humidity data on the **Realtime Display** interface after the IoT function is enabled.

In the **Refresh Interval** box, select data refresh interval. For example, you can select **5 Sec**. You can also display the temperature and humidity data in graphical way by selecting the **Display Graph** check box to. See Figure 5-153 for humidity data in graphical way.

MANAGER Chn 6 Temperature Chn6-Temperature-1	rrent Valu
SEARCH INFO MANAGER  Display Graph Access Point Type Detect Position Name Cu MANAGER  Chn 6 Temperature Chn6-Temperature-1  Chn6 Humidity Chn6-Humidity-1  Temperature Chart Humidity Chart  (%RH) 100 90 80 70	
MANAGER Chn 6 Temperature Chn6-Temperature-1 Chn 6 Humidity Chn6-Humidity-1 Chn 6 Humidity Chn6-Humidity-1	rentvalu
Chn 6 Humidity Chn6-Humidity-1 Chn 6 Humidity Chn6-Humidity-1 . 1   Temperature Chart Humidity Chart (%RH) 100 10	26°C
III     Temperature Chart     Humidity Chart     (%RH)     (%RH)     * Chn6-Humid     90     80     70	30%RH
Temperature Chart     Humidity Chart       (%RH)        • Chn6-Humid       100        • One-Humid       90        • One-Humid       80        • One-Humid       70        • One-Humid	30701111
Temperature Chart     Humidity Chart       (%RH)        • Chn6-Humid       100        • One-Humid       90        • One-Humid       80        • One-Humid       70        • One-Humid	
Temperature Chart     Humidity Chart       (%RH)        • Chn6-Humid       100        • One-Humid       90        • One-Humid       80        • One-Humid       70        • One-Humid	
Temperature Chart     Humidity Chart       (%RH)        • Chn6-Humid       100        • One-Humid       90        • One-Humid       80        • One-Humid       70        • One-Humid	
Temperature Chart     Humidity Chart       (%RH)        • Chn6-Humid       100        • One-Humid       90        • One-Humid       80        • One-Humid       70        • One-Humid	
Temperature Chart     Humidity Chart       (%RH)        • Chn6-Humid       100        • One-Humid       90        • One-Humid       80        • One-Humid       70        • One-Humid	
Temperature Chart     Humidity Chart       (%RH)        • Chn6-Humid       100        • One-Humid       90        • One-Humid       80        • One-Humid       70        • One-Humid	
Temperature Chart     Humidity Chart       (%RH)        • Chn6-Humid       100        • One-Humid       90        • One-Humid       80        • One-Humid       70        • One-Humid	
100 Constrained 90 80 70	
90 80 70	ity-1
80 70	
70	
50	
40	
30	······
20	
10	
0	
Clear	

Figure 5-153

Click Clear to delete the data.

### 5.11.2.3 Exporting Temperature and Humidity Data

You can export the temperature and humidity data in .BMP format. Take exporting humidity data as an example.

<u>Step 1</u> Prepare a USB device and plug it into the Device.

Step 2 On the Realtime Display interface, click the Humidity tab. See Figure 5-154

S IoT					
REALTIME DISPLAY	Refresh Interval	5 Sec.			
SEARCH INFO	Display Graph	Access Point	Туре	Detect Position Name	Current Valu
MANAGER		Chn 6	Temperature	Chn6-Temperature-1	26°C
					30% RH
	•				
	Temperature Chart	Humidity Chart			
	(%RH) 100				Chn6-Humidity-1
	90				
	80				
	30				
	10				
					aliant Europe
	Clear			Lo	cked

Figure 5-154

- Step 3 Click Locked to lock the data.
  - The export button is enabled.
- <u>Step 4</u> Click **Export**. The system starts exporting the data.

After exporting is finished, a **Message** dialog box is displayed.

Step 5 Click OK.

You can find the exported data on your USB device.

### 5.11.2.4 Configuring Alarm Linkage

You can configure alarm linkage settings for temperature and humidity data.

#### 5.11.2.4.1 Configuring Alarm Linkage for Temperature Data

<u>Step 1</u> On the main interface, click **IoT > MANAGER > Temperature/Humidity**. The **Temperature/Humidity** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-155.

Tol 🛞						
REALTIME DISPLAY	Sensor Pairin	g Temper	ature/Hu V	Vireless Detector	Wireless Siren	
SEARCH INFO	2	Enable	Setting	Access Point	Туре	Detect Position Nam
> MANAGER			¢	Chn 6	Temperature	Chn6-Temperature-
			\$	Chn 6	Humidity	Chn6-Humidity-1

Figure 5-155



The Setting interface is displayed. See Figure 5-156.

Setting					
Access Point			Туре		
Detect Position Name	Chn6-Temperature-1		Preview Channel	6	
Event Type	High		Upper Limit	26 °C Enable	
Period	Setting		PTZ	Setting	
Alarm Out	Setting		Latch	10	Sec.
Post Record	10	Sec.	. Anti-Dither	5	Sec.
Record CH					
Snapshot					
Tour					
Voice Prompts	None				
More Setting	Setting				
Default				Save B	lack

Figure 5-156

<u>Step 3</u> Configure the settings for alarm linkage. See Table 5-49.

Parameter	Description
Access Point	Indicates the channel that the camera is connected to.

Parameter	Description				
Туре	Temperature by default.				
Detect Position Name	Set the detect position name.				
Preview Channel	Select the channel that you want to preview to help monitor the channel of access point. This channel could be the channel of access point or any other channels according to your actual situation.				
Event Type	Select event type as <b>High</b> or <b>Low</b> , and set the upper and low temperature limit respectively. For example, select event type as				
Upper Limit	<b>High</b> and set upper limit as <b>28</b> , the alarm occurs when the temperature reaches 28℃.				
Enable	Enable the alarm function.				
Period	Define a period during which the alarm setting is active. For more information about setting the period, see "5.10.1.1 Configuring Motion Detect Settings."				
Alarm Out	<ul> <li>Click Setting to display setting interface.</li> <li>General Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the alarm devices connected to the selected output port.</li> <li>External Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the connected alarm box.</li> <li>Wireless Siren: Enable alarm activation through devices connected by USB gateway or camera gateway.</li> </ul>				
PTZ	Enable PTZ activation function. Click <b>Setting</b> to display the PTZ interface. For each PTZ camera, select the preset, tour, or pattern that you want to be called when an alarm event occurs.				
Latch	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after the external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 0 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds. If you enter 0, there will be no delay.				
Post Record	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.				
Anti-Dither	Configure the event detection lasting time. The system recordsDitheronly one event during this period. The value ranges from 5 seconds to 300 seconds.				
Snapshot	Select the check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel. NOTE To use this function, make sure the snapshot is enabled motion detect alarms in Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot.				

Parameter	Description					
	Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected					
	channel(s) starts recording after an alarm occurs.					
Record CH	D NOTE					
	The recording for IoT alarms and auto recording function must be					
	enabled. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video					
	Storage Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."					
	Select the check box to enable a tour of the selected channels.					
Tour	NOTE NOTE					
Tour	To use this function, make sure the tour is enabled and configured					
	in Main Menu > DISPLAY > TOUR.					
Voice Prompts	Select to enable audio broadcast/voice prompts in response to a					
	temperature alarm event.					
	• Show Message: Select the <b>Show Message</b> check box to					
	enable a pop-up message in your local host PC.					
	• Buzzer: Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the					
	Device.					
	• Video Matrix: Select the check box to enable the function.					
	When an alarm event occurs, the video output port outputs the					
	settings configured in "Main Menu > DISPLAY > TOUR."					
More Setting	NOTE NOTE					
More Setting	Not all models support this function.					
	• Send Email: Enable the system to send an email notification					
	when an alarm event occurs.					
	NOTE NOTE					
	To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in					
	Main Menu > NETWORK > EMAIL.					
	• Log: Select the check box to enable the Device to record a					
	local alarm log					
	Table 5.40					

<u>Step 4</u> Click **Save** to save the settings.

#### 5.11.2.4.2 Configuring Alarm Settings for Humidity Data

You can configure the alarm event by setting the humidity data.

<u>Step 1</u> On the main interface, click **IoT > MANAGER > Temperature/Humidity**.

The **Temperature/Humidity** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-157.

🕥 IoT						
REALTIME DISPLAY	Sensor Pairir	ig Temper	ature/Hu V	Vireless Detector	Wireless Siren	
SEARCH INFO	2	Enable	Setting	Access Point	Туре	Detect Position Nam
> MANAGER			¢	Chn 6	Temperature	Chn6-Temperature-
			\$	Chn 6	Humidity	Chn6-Humidity-1

Figure 5-157

<u>Step 2</u> On the humidity information line, click



The Setting interface is displayed. See Figure 5-158.

Setting					
Access Point			Туре		
Detect Position Name	Chn6-Humidity-1		Preview Channel	6	
Event Type	High Humidity		Upper Limit	60 %RH Enable	
Period	Setting		РТΖ	Setting	
Alarm Out	Setting		Latch	10	Sec.
Post Record	10	Sec.	Anti-Dither	5	Sec.
Record CH					
Snapshot					
Tour					
Voice Prompts	None				
More Setting	Setting				
Default				Save Ba	ck
Delault					CK

Figure 5-158

<u>Step 3</u> Configure the settings for the following parameters. See Table 5-50.

Parameter	Description
Access Point	Indicates the channel that the camera is connected to.

Parameter	Description
Туре	Humidity by default.
Detect Position Name	Set the detect position name.
Preview Channel	Select the channel that you want to preview to help monitor the channel of access point. This channel could be the channel of access point or any other channels according to your actual situation.
Event Type	Select event type as <b>High Humidity</b> or <b>Low Humidity</b> , and set the upper and low humidity limit respectively. For example, select
Upper Limit	event type as <b>High Humidity</b> and set upper limit as <b>60</b> , the alarm occurs when the humidity reaches 60%RH.
Enable	Enable the alarm function.
Period	Define a period during which the alarm setting is active. For more information about setting the period, see "5.10.1.1 Configuring Motion Detect Settings."
Alarm Out	<ul> <li>Click Setting to display setting interface.</li> <li>General Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the alarm devices connected to the selected output port.</li> <li>External Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the connected alarm box.</li> <li>Wireless Siren: Enable alarm activation through devices connected by USB gateway or camera gateway.</li> </ul>
PTZ	Enable PTZ activation function. Click <b>Setting</b> to display the PTZ interface. For each PTZ camera, select the preset, tour, or pattern that you want to be called when an alarm event occurs.
Latch	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after the external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 0 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds. If you enter 0, there will be no delay.
Post Record	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.
Anti-Dither	Configure the event detection lasting time. The system records only one event during this period. The value ranges from 5 seconds to 300 seconds.
Snapshot	Select the check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel. NOTE To use this function, make sure the snapshot is enabled motion detect alarms in Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot.

Parameter	Description				
	Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected				
	channel(s) starts recording after an alarm occurs.				
Record CH	NOTE NOTE				
	The recording for IoT alarms and auto recording function must be				
	enabled. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video				
	Storage Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."				
	Select the check box to enable a tour of the selected channels.				
Tour	NOTE NOTE				
TOUT	To use this function, make sure the tour is enabled and configured				
	in Main Menu > DISPLAY > TOUR.				
Voice Prompts	Select to enable audio broadcast/voice prompts in response to a				
	temperature alarm event.				
	• Show Message: Select the <b>Show Message</b> check box to				
	enable a pop-up message in your local host PC.				
	• Buzzer: Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the				
	Device.				
	• Video Matrix: Select the check box to enable the function.				
	When an alarm event occurs, the video output port outputs the				
	settings configured in "Main Menu > DISPLAY > TOUR."				
More Setting	NOTE NOTE				
More Setting	Not all models support this function.				
	• Send Email: Enable the system to send an email notification				
	when an alarm event occurs.				
	NOTE NOTE				
	To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in				
	Main Menu > NETWORK > EMAIL.				
	Log: Select the check box to enable the Device to record a				
	local alarm log				

<u>Step 4</u> Click **Save** to save the settings.

# 5.11.2.5 Searching IoT Information

You can search and backup all your IoT data.

To back up the data, you should prepare a USB device and plug it into the Device. <u>Step 1</u> On the main interface, click **IoT > SEARCH INFO**. See Figure 5-159.

Ś	) IoT					LIVE	1 🔄 🖓
RE	EALTIME DISPLAY	Access Point	1		Display Type	List	
> SE	EARCH INFO	Туре	All		Status	All	
MA	ANAGER	Start Time	2017-11-06		End Time	2017-12-06 00:0	
			Time	Access Point	Туре	Detect Position N	lame C
			₩ > >> 1				• Backup

Figure 5-159

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the parameters settings. See Table 5-51.

Parameter	Description
Access Point	Indicates the channel that the camera is connected to.
Display Type	In the <b>Display Type</b> list, select <b>List</b> or <b>Graph</b> .
Tuno	Select the information type that you want to search. You can select
Туре	Humidity or Temperature.
	Select the information state that you want to search.
Status	This option is available when you select List in the Display Type
	list.
Start Time	Enter the start time and end time for the information that you want
End Time	to search.

Table 5-51

- <u>Step 3</u> Click **Search**. The system starts search according to your parameters settings. After searching is finished, the result displays.
  - For the data displayed in list, see Figure 5-160.

Click Go To to switch result pages.

🕥 loT						LIVE	🔔 🕒 📲
REALTIME DISPLAY	Access P	aint	1		Display Type	List	
SEARCH INFO	Access P	oint			Display Type	List	
	Туре		All		Status	All	
MANAGER	Start Time		2017-11-06 00:00:00		End Time	2017-12-06 00:00	:00
							Search
	120		Time	Access Point	Туре	Detect Position Na	ame 🔺
			1-07 21:13:58	Chn 1	Humidity	Chn1-Humidity-	
		2017-1	1-07 21:14:00	Chn 1	Temperature	Chn1-Temperatur	
		2017-11	1-07 21:14:01	Chn 1	Humidity	Chn1-Humidity-	
		2017-11	1-07 21:14:09	Chn 1	Temperature	Chn1-Temperatur	
		2017-1	1-07 21:14:10	Chn 1	Humidity	Chn1-Humidity-	
		2017-11	1-07 21:14:14	Chn 1	Humidity	Chn1-Humidity-	
		2017-11	1-07 21:14:23	Chn 1	Humidity	Chn1-Humidity-	
		2017-11	1-07 21:16:04	Chn 1	Temperature	Chn1-Temperatur	
		2017-11	1-07 21:16:06	Chn 1	Temperature	Chn1-Temperatur	
		2017-11	1-07 21:16:07	Chn 1	Humidity	Chn1-Humidity-	
	11	2017-11	1-07 21:16:16	Chn 1	Temperature	Chn1-Temperatur	
	12	2017-11	1-07 21:16:17	Chn 1	Humidity	Chn1-Humidity-	
	13	2017-1	1-07 21:16:26	Chn 1	Temperature	Chn1-Temperatur	
	14	2017-11	1-07 21:16:27	Chn 1	Humidity	Chn1-Humidity-	
		2017-11	1-07 21:16:36	Chn 1	Temperature	Chn1-Temperatur	
							•
		1/85	> >> 1	Go To			Backup

Figure 5-160

• For the data displayed in graph, see Figure 5-161.

REALTIME DISPLAY     > SEARCH INFO     MANAGER     Access Point     1        Type     Humidity        Start Time        Chent Humidity-1     0        (66RH)        (66RH)        (66RH)        (66RH)           (66RH)                 Backup	Access Point     1     Display Type     Graph       > SEARCH INFO     Type     Humidity     Image: Complex Start Time     2017-11-06     00:00:00       Start Time     2017-11-06     00:00:00     End Time     2017-12-06     00:00:00	
> SEARCH INFO         Type         Humidity            MANAGER         Start Time         2017-11-06         00:00:00         End Time         2017-12-06         00:00:00           Search         <	SEARCH INFO         Type         Humidity         *           MANAGER         Start Time         2017-11-06         00:00:00         End Time         2017-12-06         00:00:00	1
MANAGER         Start Time         2017-11-06         00:00:00         End Time         2017-12-06         00:00:00           Search         Search	MANAGER         2017-11-06         00:00:00         End Time         2017-12-06         00:00:00	
	100 80 80 70 60 50 40 30 20	



 $\underline{Step \ 4} \quad \text{Click } \textbf{Backup.} \text{ The system starts exporting the data.}$ 

After exporting is finished, a **Message** dialog box is displayed.

Step 5 Click OK.

You can find the exported data on your USB device.

# 5.11.3 Configuring Wireless Siren

You can connect the wireless siren to the Device, when there is an alarm event activated on the Device, the wireless siren generate alarms.

#### Step 1 Select Main Menu > IoT > MANAGER > Wireless Siren.

The **Wireless Siren** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-162Figure 5-140.

	🕥 Іот					LIVE	
	REALTIME DISPLAY	Sensor Pairing	Temperature/Hu	Wireless Detector	Wireless Siren		
	SEARCH INFO	USB Gateway					
>	MANAGER	Mode					
		Auto					
		Manual					
		Stop					
		Camera Gatev	way				
		Mode	All 1	234567	8 9 10 11 12		
		Auto					
		Manual					
		Stop					
		Alarm Release	в				
		Aldini Release					
						Apply	Back

Figure 5-162

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the wireless alarm output. For details, see Table 5-52.Table 5-46

Parameter	Description
	• Auto: Automatically activate alarm if the alarm output function
	for wireless siren is enabled for specific events. For example, if
USB Gateway,	you want to enable the alarm output through wireless siren for
Camera Gateway	motion detection, see "Alarm Output" parameter in Table 5-34.
	Manual: Activate alarm immediately.
	• <b>Stop</b> : Do not activate alarm.
Alarm Release	Click <b>OK to</b> clear all alarm output status of wireless siren.

Table 5-52

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to save the settings.

# 5.12 Configuring POS Settings

You can connect the Device to the POS (Point of Sale) machine and receive the information from it. This function applies to the scenarios such as supermarket POS machine. After connection is established, the Device can access the POS information and display the overlaid text in the channel window.

#### III NOTE

Playing POS information in the local playback and viewing the POS information in the live view screen only support single-channel mode. Displaying monitoring screen and playing back in the web support multi-channel mode.

# 5.12.1 Searching the Transaction Records

						0			
	POS							LIVE	
>	POS SEARCH	Transaction No.				Sea	arch		
	POS SETUP	Start Time		2017 - 10 - 08	00 : 00 : 00				
		End Time		2017 - 11 - 07	20 : 20 : 55				
			Trans	action Time		Transactio	on No.	Play	Details
		< 0/0							

#### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > POS > POS SEARCH.

The **POS SEARCH** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-163.

Figure 5-163

- <u>Step 2</u> In the **Transaction No.** list, enter the transaction number on your receipt printed out by POS machine.
- <u>Step 3</u> In the **Start Time** box and **End Time** box, enter the time period that you want to search the POS transaction information.
- Step 4 Click **Search**. The searched transaction results display in the table.

# 5.12.2 Configuring POS Settings

#### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > POS > POS SETUP. The POS SETUP interface is displayed. See Figure 5-164.

POS					LIVE	
POS SEARCH	POS Name	pos1	▼ <b>/</b> `	Enable		
> POS SETUP		posi	<u>·</u>			
				Record CH	*	
				Privacy Setup	\$	
				Protocol Type	POS	
				Connect Type	TCP -	\$
				Character Encoding	UTF-8	
				Overlay Mode	TURN	
				Network time out	100	
				Time Display	120	
				Font Size	Medium	
				COLOR		
				POS Info		
				Transaction Start		
				Transaction End		
				Line Delimiter		
	Default				Apply	Back

Figure 5-164

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the POS parameters. See Table 5-53.

Parameter	Description						
	In the <b>POS Name</b> list, select the POS machine that you want to						
POS Name	configures settings for. Click to modify the POS name.						
	NOTE NOTE						
	The POS name supports 21 Chinese characters or 63 English						
	characters.						
Enable	Enable the POS function.						
	Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected						
	channel(s) starts recording after an alarm occurs.						
Record CH	NOTE NOTE						
	The recording for POS alarms and auto recording function must						
	be enabled. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video						
	Storage Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."						
Privacy Setup	Enter the privacy content.						
Drata and Turna	Select <b>POS</b> by default. Different machine corresponds to different						
Protocol Type	protocol.						

	In the <b>Connect Type</b> list, select the connection protocol type.					
Connect Type	Click , the IP Address interface is displayed.					
	In the <b>Source IP</b> box, enter the IP address (the machine that is					
	connected to the Device) that sends messages.					
Convert	Select a character encoding mode.					
Overlay	In the <b>Overlay</b> list, Select <b>Turn</b> or <b>ROLL</b> .					
	When the network is not working correctly and cannot be					
Notwork time out	recovered after the entered timeout limit, the POS information will					
Network time out	not display normally. After the network is recovered, the latest					
	POS information will be displayed.					
	Enter the time that how long you want to keep the POS					
Time Display	information displaying. For example, enter 5, the POS information					
	disappear from the screen after 5 seconds.					
Font Size	In the Font Size list, select Small, Medium, or Big as the text					
FUIL SIZE	size of POS information					
COLOR	In the color bar, click to select the color for the text size of POS					
COLOR	information.					
POS Info	Enable the POS Info function, the POS information displays in the					
P03 III0	live view screen.					
Transaction Start	Enter the transaction start character and end character.					
Transaction End						
Line Delimiter Enter the line delimiter that you want to use.						
	Table 5-53					

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

# 5.13 Configuring Backup Settings

# 5.13.1 Finding USB Device

When you inset a USB storage device into the USB port of the Device, the Device detects the USB storage device and pops up "Find USB device" interface, which provides you a shortcut to perform backup and upgrading operations. See Figure 5-165.

For details, see "5.13.2 Backing up Files", "5.19.2 Viewing Log Information", "5.18.5 Exporting and Importing System Settings", and "5.18.7 Upgrading the Device."

Find USB device.							
	sda5(USB DISK) 15.60 GB/15.60 GB(Free/Total)						
File Backu	p Log Backup						
Config Back	up System Upgrade						

Figure 5-165

# 5.13.2 Backing up Files

You can back up the recorded videos and snapshots.

#### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > BACKUP.

The **BACKUP** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-166.

🗘 ВАСКИР						LIVE	] 🛃 💽 🗸 🛤
	Device Name Path	sda5(USB D	NSK)		Format Browse	15.60 GB/15.60 GB	(Free/Total)
	Record CH Start Time		8 00:00:00		Type End Time	All 2017-11-06 09:	
	File Format 0 Char	DAV Inel Type	Start Time	•	End Time	Search Size(KB)	Clear
	0.00 KB(Space I	Needed)					Backup

Figure 5-166

<u>Step 2</u>	Configure the	settings for t	ne backup parameters	. See Table 5-54.
---------------	---------------	----------------	----------------------	-------------------

Parameter	Description
Device Name	In the <b>Device Name</b> list, select the device that you want to back up
Device Mame	the files to.
Format	Click Format to format the selected device.

Parameter	Description				
Path	Click <b>Browse</b> , the <b>Browse</b> interface is displayed. Select the route				
Faul	where you want to search for the files.				
Record CH	In the <b>Record CH</b> list, select the channel where you want to search				
	for the files.				
Туре	In the <b>Type</b> list, select the file type that you want to search.				
Start Time	Enter the start time and end time for the files that you want to				
End Time	search.				
File Format	In the File Format list, select the file format that you want to				
File Format	search.				

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Search** to search the files that meet the configured settings. The searched results will display in the table.

- <u>Step 4</u> Select the files that you want to back up.

Click Clear to remove all the searched results.

# 5.14 Network Management

# 5.14.1 Configuring Network Settings

You can ensure the network interworking between the Device and other devices through configuring the network settings.

# 5.14.1.1 Configuring TCP/IP Settings

You can configure the settings for the Device such as IP address, DNS according to the networking plan.

Select **Main Menu > NETWORK > TCP/IP**, the **TCP/IP** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-167. For details about parameter settings, see "5.1.4.4 Configuring Network Settings."

🚱 NETWORK			LIVE	
> TCP/IP	Net Mode	Multi-address		
CONNECTION	Default Ethernet Port	Ethernet Port1		
Wi-Fi	Ethernet Card	Ethernet Port1		
PPPoE				
DDNS	IP Version	IPv4 🔻		
EMAIL	MAC Address			
UPnP	DHCP			
SNMP	IP Address	192 . 168 . 3 . 113		
MULTICAST	Subnet Mask	255 . 255 . 0 . 0		
REGISTER	Default Gateway	192 . 168 . 0 . 1		
ALARM CENTER	DNS DHCP			
P2P	Preferred DNS	8.8.8.8		
	Alternate DNS	8.8.4.4		
	MTU	1500		
			Apply	E

Figure 5-167

# 5.14.1.2 Configuring Port Settings

You can configure the maximum connection accessing the Device from Client such as WEB, Platform, and Mobile Phone and configure each port settings.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > NETWORK > CONNECTION.

The **CONNECTION** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-168.

🚱 NETWORK				
TCP/IP  CONNECTION	Max Connection	128	( 0 -128 )	
Wi-Fi	TCP Port	37777	( 1025 - 65535 )	
PPPoE	UDP Port	37778	( 1025 - 65535 )	
	HTTP Port	80	(1-65535)	
DDNS	RTSP Port	554	(1-65535)	
EMAIL	POS Port	38800	(1025~65535)	
UPnP	HTTPS Enable			
SNMP	HTTPS Port	443	(1-65535)	
MULTICAST				
REGISTER				
ALARM CENTER				
P2P				
۴.				
				Apply Back

Figure 5-168

The connection parameters except Max Connection cannot take effects until the Device has been restarted.

Parameter	Description
	The allowable maximum clients accessing the Device at the same
Max Connection	time, such as WEB, Platform, and Mobile Phone.
	Select a value between 1 and 128. The default value setting is 128.
TCP Port	The default value setting is 37777. You can enter the value
ICFFOIL	according to your actual situation.
UDP Port	The default value setting is 37778. You can enter the value
ODP POIL	according to your actual situation.
	The default value setting is 80. You can enter the value according
HTTP Port	to your actual situation.
	If you enter other value, for example, 70, and then you should enter
	70 after the IP address when logging in the Device by browser.
RTSP Port	The default value setting is 554. You can enter the value according
RISP FUIL	to your actual situation.
POS Port	Data transmission. The value range is from 1 through 65535. The
P03 P01	default value is 38800.
HTTPS Enable	Enable HTTPS.
HTTPS Port	HTTPS communication port. The default value setting is 443. You
	can enter the value according to your actual situation.

Table 5-55

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

### 5.14.1.3 Configuring Wi-Fi Connection Settings

You can make wireless connection between the Device and the other devices in the same network through Wi-Fi settings, facilitating the devices connection and mobility.

Only the Device with Wi-Fi module supports this function.

#### Step 1 Select Main Menu > NETWORK > Wi-Fi.

The Wi-Fi interface is displayed. See Figure 5-169.

	🚱 NETWORK					LIVE	
	TCP/IP	Wi-Fi Auto	Connect				
	CONNECTION	WI-FI Auto	Connect				
>	Wi-Fi	0	SSID	Signal Intensity	Wi-Fi Working Info		
	PPPoE		0010		Current Hotspot	No Connection	
	DDNS					No Connection	
	EMAIL				IP Address		
	UPnP				Subnet Mask		
	SNMP				Default Gateway		
	MULTICAST						
	REGISTER						
	ALARM CENTER						
	P2P						
							Deat
		Refresh				Apply	Back

Figure 5-169

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the Wi-Fi connection parameters. See Table 5-56.

Parameter	Description
	Enable Wi-Fi Auto Connect.
Wi-Fi Auto Connect	After the Device is restarted, it will automatically connect to the
	nearest hotspot that had been connected successfully.
Refresh	Refresh the hotspot list. The self-adaption function such as adding
Reliesh	password is supported if such setting was once configured.
	In the <b>hotpot</b> s list, select a hotspot, and then click <b>Connect</b> .
	• To reconnect the same hotspot, disconnect first and then
Connect	reconnect.
	To connect to other hotspot, disconnect from the current
	connected hotspot first, and then connect to the other hotspot.
Disconnect	To disconnect from a hotspot, click <b>Disconnect</b> .

Table 5-56

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

After the Device is connected to a Wi-Fi hotspot, in the **Wi-Fi Working Info** area, the current hotspot, IP address, subnet mask, and default gateway are displayed.

## 5.14.1.4 Configuring PPPoE Settings

PPPoE is another way for the Device to access the network. You can establish network connection by configuring PPPoE settings to give the Device a dynamic IP address in the WAN. To use this function, firstly you need to obtain the user name and password from the Internet Service Provider.

#### Step 1 Select Main Menu > NETWORK > PPPoE.

The **PPPoE** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-170.

	🚱 NETWORK		 	LIVE	
	TCP/IP	Enable			
	CONNECTION	User Name			
	Wi-Fi	Password			
>	PPPoE	IP Address			
	DDNS				
	EMAIL				
	UPnP				
	SNMP				
	MULTICAST				
	REGISTER				
	ALARM CENTER				
	P2P				
				Apply	Back

Figure 5-170

- <u>Step 2</u> Enable the PPPoE function.
- <u>Step 3</u> In the **User Name** box and **Password** box, enter the user name and password accordingly provided by the Internet Service Provider.
- <u>Step 4</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

The system pops up a message to indicate the successfully saved. The IP address appears on the PPPoE interface. You can use this IP address to access the Device.

When the PPPoE function is enabled, the IP address on the **TCP/IP** interface cannot be modified.

# 5.14.1.5 Configuring DDNS Settings

When the IP address of the Device changes frequently, the DDNS function can dynamically refresh the correspondence between the domain on DNS and the IP address, ensuring you access the Device by using the domain.

### Preparing for Configuration

Please confirm if the Device supports the DDNS Type and log in the website provided by the DDNS service provider to register the information such as domain from PC located in the WAN.

- If DDNS belongs to Quick DDNS type, domain registration is not needed.
- If DDNS belongs to other type, you need to login the DDNS website to register the information such as user name, password, and domain name.

After you have registered and logged in the DDNS website successfully, you can view the information of all the connected devices under this user name.

### **Configuring Steps**

#### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > NETWORK > DDNS.

The **DDNS** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-171.

	NETWORK				LIVE	1 🕂 - 🛤
	TCP/IP CONNECTION Wi-Fi	Enable DDNS Type Host IP	Dyndns DDNS v members.dyndns.org			
>	PPPoE DDNS	Domain Name User Name Doceverd				
	EMAIL UPnP SNMP MULTICAST REGISTER ALARM CENTER P2P	Password Interval	5	Min.		
					Apply	Back

Figure 5-171

- <u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the DDNS parameters.
  - Non Quick DDNS type. See Table 5-57.

Parameter	Description
-----------	-------------

Parameter	Description	
Enable	Enable the DDNS function.	
DDNS Type	Type and address of DDNS service provider.	
	Type: Dyndns DDNS; address: members.dyndns.org	
Host IP	Type: NO-IP DDNS; address: dynupdate.no-ip.com	
	Type: CN99 DDNS; address: members.3322.org	
Domain Name	The domain name for registering on the website of DDNS service	
Domain Name	provider.	
User Name	Enter the user name and password obtained from DDNS service	
Deceward	provider. You need to register (including user name and password)	
Password	on the website of DDNS service provider.	
Interval	Enter the amount of time that you want to update the DDNS.	
<u>-</u>	Table 5 57	

•	Quick DDNS type. See Table 5-58.	

Parameter	Description			
Enable	Enable the DDNS function.			
DDNS Type	ype of DDNS service provider.			
Host IP	Address of DDNS service provider. The default is			
HUSLIF	www.quickddns.com which cannot be modified.			
	The domain name for registering on the website of DDNS service			
	provider.			
Domain Name	Select the domain mode as default domain or customized domain.			
	• The default domain format is "MAC address (without			
	".").quickddns.com"			
	The customized domain format is "name. quickddns.com."			
Email	In the Email box, enter the email address that is used to access			
	the DDNS service provider.			
	After configuration is completed, click <b>Test</b> to check if the domain			
Test	name is successfully registered. If yes, go to the next step; if not,			
	please check the network connection status.			

Table 5-58

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

Enter the domain name in the browser on your PC, and then press **Enter**. If the web interface of the Device is displayed, the configuration is successful. If not, the configuration is failed.

# 5.14.1.6 Configuring EMAIL Settings

You can configure the email settings to enable the system to send the email as a notification when there is an alarm event occurs.

#### Step 1 Select Main Menu > NETWORK > EMAIL.

The **EMAIL** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-172.

🚱 NETWORK				LIVE	L 🗗	20
TCP/IP	Enable					
CONNECTION	SMTP Server	MailServer				
Wi-Fi	Port	25				
PPPoE	User Name					
DDNS	Password					
EMAIL	Anonymity					
UPnP						
SNMP	Mail Receiver	Receiver3 -				
MULTICAST	Email Address	none				
REGISTER	Sender					
ALARM CENTER	Title	XVR ALERT				
P2P	Attachment					
	Authentication	NONE				
	Interval	120	Sec.			
	Health Enable					
	Interval	60	Min.			
ł.						
				Apply	Back	

Figure 5-172

<b>•</b> • •	<b>•</b> • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• ·· ·· ·	a <u>-</u>
Sten 2	Continuire the settings	for the email parameters	See Table 5-59
Old p Z	Configure the Settings	, loi the chial parameters	

Parameter	Description
Enable	Enable the email function.
SMTP Server	Enter the address of SMTP server of sender's email account.
Port	Enter the port value of SMTP server. The default value setting is
FOIL	25. You can enter the value according to your actual situation.
User Name	Enter the user name and necessary of conder's small account
Password	Enter the user name and password of sender's email account.
Anonymity	If enable the anonymity function, you can login as anonymity.
	In the Mail Receiver list, select the number of receiver that you
Mail Receiver	want to receive the notification. The Device supports up to three
	mail receivers.
Email Address	Enter the email address of mail receiver(s).
Sender	Enter the sender's email address. It supports maximum three
Sender	senders separated by comma.
	Enter the email subject.
Title	Supports Chinese, English and Arabic numerals. It supports
	maximum 64 characters.
Attachment	Enable the attachment function. When there is an alarm event, the
	system can attach snapshots as an attachment to the email.
Authentication	Select the encryption type: NONE, SSL, or TLS.

	This is the interval that the system sends an email for the same
	type of alarm event, which means, the system does not send an
Intonyal (See.)	email upon any alarm event.
Interval (Sec.)	This setting helps to avoid the large amount of emails caused by
	frequent alarm events.
	The value ranges from 0 to 3600. 0 means that there is no interval.
Hoolth Enable	Enable the health test function. The system can send a test email
Health Enable	to check the connection.
	This is the interval that the system sends a health test email.
Interval (Min.)	The value ranges from 30 to 1440. 0 means that there is no
	interval.
	Click Test to test the email sending function. If the configuration is
Test	correct, the receiver's email account will receive the email.
	D NOTE
	Before testing, click <b>Apply</b> to save the settings.
	Table 5 50

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

### 5.14.1.7 Configuring UPnP Settings

You can map the relationship between the LAN and the WAN to access the Device on the LAN through the IP address on the WAN.

### Preparation for Configuration

- Login the router to set the WAN port to enable the IP address to connect into the WAN.
- Enable the UPnP function at the router.
- Connect the Device with the LAN port on the router to connect into the LAN.
- Select **Main Menu > NETWORK > TCP/IP**, configure the IP address into the router IP address range, or enable the DHCP function to obtain an IP address automatically.

### **Configuration Steps**

#### Step 1 Select Main Menu > NETWORK > UPnP.

The **UPnP** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-173.

	🚱 NETWORK								LIVE	
	TCP/IP	PAT								
	CONNECTION	Status		Offline						
	Wi-Fi	LAN IF								
	PPPoE	WANI	P							
	DDNS	PAT T	able							
	EMAIL	7	Service Name		Protocol	Int.Port	Ext.Port	Edit		
>	UPnP		HTTP		TCP					
	SNMP		TCP		TCP	37777	37777	ľ		
			UDP		UDP	37778	37778			
	MULTICAST		RTSP		UDP	554	554	ľ		
	REGISTER		RTSP		TCP	554	554			
			SNMP		UDP	161	161	ľ		
	ALARM CENTER		HTTPS		TCP	443	443			
	P2P									
									Apply	Back

Figure 5-173

010	Configure the setting		·· · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	T-LL- C CO
	I ONTIGUISA THA SATTING	is for the LIPhP	narametere si	
			parameters. O	

Parameter	Description
PAT	Enable the UPnP function.
	Indicates the status of UPnP function.
Status	Offline: Failed.
	Online: Succeeded.
	Enter IP address of router on the LAN.
LAN IP	NOTE NOTE
	After mapping succeeded, the system obtains IP address
	automatically without performing any configurations.
	Enter IP address of router on the WAN.
WAN IP	NOTE NOTE
	After mapping succeeded, the system obtains IP address
	automatically without performing any configurations.

	The settings in DAT table correspond to the LIDED DAT table on the
	The settings in PAT table correspond to the UPnP PAT table on the
	router.
	<ul> <li>Service Name: Name of network server.</li> </ul>
	Protocol: Type of protocol.
	• Int. Port: Internal port that is mapped on the Device.
	• Ext. Port: External port that is mapped on the router.
	• To avoid the conflict, when setting the external port, try to use
	the ports from 1024 through 5000 and avoid popular ports
PAT Table	from 1 through 255 and system ports from 256 through 1023.
	• When there are several devices in the LAN, please reasonably
	arrange the ports mapping to avoid mapping to the same
	external port.
	• When establishing a mapping relationship, please ensure the
	mapping ports are not occupied or limited.
	• The internal and external ports of TCP and UDP must be the
	same and cannot be modified.
	Click for modify the external port.
	Table 5-60

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

In the browser, enter http://WAN IP: External IP port. You can visit the LAN Device.

# 5.14.1.8 Configuring SNMP Settings

#### 

Not all models support this function.

You can connect the Device with some software such as MIB Builder and MG-SOFT MIB Browser to manage and control the Device from the software.

### Preparation for Configuration

- Install the software that can manage and control the SNMP, such as MIB Builder and MG-SOFT MIB Browser
- Obtain the MIB files that correspond to the current version from the technical support.

### **Configuration Steps**

#### Step 1 Select Main Menu > NETWORK > SNMP.

The **SNMP** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-174.



Figure 5-174

<u><u> </u></u>		SNMP parameters. See Table 5-61.
Stop 7	Contiguing the cottings for the	SNIVID parameters See Joble 6-61
		SINVE DATATIETS, SEE TADE JOT.
0.002	e egan e ane e e ange i en ane	

Parameter	Description		
Enable	Enable the SNMP function.		
Version	Select the check box of SNMP version(s) that you are using.		
SNMP Port	Indicates the monitoring port on the agent program.		
Read Community	Indicates the read/write strings supported by the agent program.		
Write Community			
Trap Address	Indicates the destination address for the agent program to send the		
Trap Address	Trap information.		
Trop Port	Indicates the destination port for the agent program to send the		
Trap Port	Trap information.		

Table	5-61
-------	------

- Step 3 Compile the two MIB files by MIB Builder.
- Step 4 Run MG-SOFT MIB Browser to load in the module from compilation.
- <u>Step 5</u> On the MG-SOFT MIB Browser, enter the Device IP that you want to manage, and then select the version number to query.
- <u>Step 6</u> On the MG-SOFT MIB Browser, unfold the tree-structured directory to obtain the configurations of the Device, such as the channels quantity and software version.

### 5.14.1.9 Configuring Multicast Settings

When you access the Device from the network to view the video, if the access is exceeded, the video will not display. You can use the multicast function to group the IP to solve the problem. <u>Step 1</u> Select **Main Menu > NETWORK > MULTICAST**.

	🚱 NETWORK			LIVE	L →
	TCP/IP	Enable			
	CONNECTION	IP Address	239 . 255 . 42 . 42		
	Wi-Fi	Port	36666		
	PPPoE	Port			
	DDNS				
	EMAIL				
	UPnP				
	SNMP				
>	MULTICAST				
	REGISTER				
	ALARM CENTER				
	P2P				
_					
				Apply	Back

The MULTICAST interface is displayed. See Figure 5-175.

Figure 5-175

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the multicast parameters. See Table 5-62.

Parameter	Description		
Enable Enable the multicast function.			
IP Address	Enter the IP address that you want to use as the multicast IP.		
IP Address	The IP address ranges from 224.0.0.0 through 239.255.255.255.		
Dent	Enter the port for the multicast. The port ranges from 1025 through		
Port	65000.		

Table 5-62

Step 3 Click Apply to complete the settings.

You can use the multicast IP address to login the web. See Figure 5-176. On the web login dialog box, in the **Type** list, select **MULTICAST**. The web will automatically obtain the multicast IP address and join. Then you can view the video through multicast function.

Login in	
🚨 admin	
Password 🔤 💿	
TCP	
тср	
UDP	
MULTICAST	
Login	

Figure 5-176

# 5.14.1.10 Configuring Register Settings

You can register the Device into the specified proxy server which acts as the transit to make it easier for the client software to access the Device.

### Step 1 Select Main Menu > NETWORK > REGISTER.

The **REGISTER** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-177.

🚱 NETWORK			
TCP/IP CONNECTION Wi-Fi PPPoE DDNS EMAIL UPnP SNMP MULTICAST	Enable No. Server IP Address Port Sub Device ID	1 * 0.0.0.0 8000 0	
> REGISTER			
ALARM CENTER P2P			
			Apply Back



#### <u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the register parameters. See Table 5-63.

Parameter	Description
Enable	Enable the register function.

No.	Select a number.		
Server IP Address	Enter the server IP address or the server domain that you want to		
Server IP Address	register to.		
Port	Enter the port of the server.		
Sub Service ID         This ID is allocated by the server and used for the Device			

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

# 5.14.1.11 Configuring Alarm Center Settings

You can configure the alarm center server to receive the uploaded alarm information. To use this function, the **Alarm Upload** check box must be selected. For details about alarm event settings, see "5.10 Alarm Events Settings."

#### Step 1 Select Main Menu > NETWORK > ALARM CENTER.

G	NETWORK			LIVE	💄 🕞 🗸 🔛
	P/IP	Enable			
со	NNECTION	Protocol Type	ALARM CENTER		
		Host IP	192 . 168 . 0 . 2		
PP	PoE	Port	1		
DD	NS	Self-Report Time	All v 08:00 v		
EM	IAIL				
UP	nP				
	MP				
MU	ILTICAST				
	GISTER				
> AL/	ARM CENTER				
P2					
				Apply	Back

Figure 5-178

Step 2	Configure the	e settinas for	the alarm	center parameters	. See Table 5-64.

Parameter	Description
Enable	Enable the alarm center function.
Protocol Type	In the <b>Protocol Type</b> list, select protocol type. The default is
	ALARM CENTER.
Host IP	The IP address and communication port of the PC installed with
Port	alarm client.

Parameter	Description
Self-Report Time	In the Self-Report Time list, select time cycle and specific time for
	uploading alarm.

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

### 5.14.1.12 Configuring P2P Settings

You can manage the devices by using P2P technology to download the application and register the devices. For details, see "5.1.4.5 Configuring P2P Settings."

# 5.14.2 Configuring Network Testing Settings

### 5.14.2.1 Testing the Network

You can test the network connection status between the Device and other devices.

#### Step 1 Select Main Menu > INFO > NETWORK > Test.

The **Test** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-179.

	<ul><li>INFO</li></ul>					LIVE	
	VERSION	Online User	Network Load	Network Test			
	LOG	Network Test					
	EVENT	Destination IP					
>	NETWORK	Test Result					
	HDD						
	DEVICE STATUS	Network Sniffer Pa	acket Backup				
	CHANNEL INFO	Device Name	sdb5(USB DISK	)			Refresh
	BPS	Address					Browse
		Name	IP	Snif	ffer Packet Size	Sniffer Packet	Backup
		LAN1	192.168	.20.13	0KB		
_							

Figure 5-179

<u>Step 2</u> In the **Destination IP** box, enter the IP address.

#### Step 3 Click Test.

After testing is completed, the test result is displayed. You can check the evaluation for average delay, packet loss, and network status. See Figure 5-180.

INFO				LIVE	1
VERSION	Online User	Network Load	Network Test		
LOG	Network Test				
EVENT	Destination IP	192.168.20.13			
NETWORK	Test Result	Average Delay:1	.0ms Packet Loss Rate:0%	Network Status:OK	
HDD					
DEVICE STATUS	Network Sniffer Pa	acket Backup			
CHANNEL INFO	Device Name	sdb5(USB DISK	()		Refresh
BPS	Address				Browse
	Name	IP	Sniffer Packe	et Size Sniffer Pack	et Backup
	LAN1	192.168	.20.13 0KB		

Figure 5-180

## 5.14.2.2 Capturing Packet and Backing up

Packet capture means the operations such as capturing, resending, and editing data that are sent and received during network transmission. When there is network abnormality, you can perform packet capturing and back up into the USB storage device. This date can be provided to the technical support for analyzing the network condition.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > INFO > NETWORK > Network Test.

The Network Test interface is displayed. See Figure 5-181.

INFO					LIVE	
VERSION	Online User	Network Load	Network Tes	st		
LOG	Network Test					
EVENT	Destination IP	192.168.20.13				
NETWORK	Test Result	Average Delay	:1.0ms Packet	Loss Rate:0% Network S	tatus:OK	
HDD						
DEVICE STATUS	Network Sniffer F	acket Backup				
CHANNEL INFO	Device Name	sdb5(USB DIS	SK)			Refresh
BPS	Address					Browse
	Name	I		Sniffer Packet Size	Sniffer Packe	t Backup
	LAN1	192.16	58.20.13	0KB		

Figure 5-181

- <u>Step 2</u> Connect a USB storage device to the Device.
- Step 3 Click Fresh.

The Device starts detecting the USB storage device and displays its name in the **Device Name** box.

- <u>Step 4</u> Select the route of the data that you want to capture and back up.
  - 1) In the Network Sniffer Packet Backup, click **Browse**.

The **Browse** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-182.

Brow	rse						
	Device Name	sda5(USB DISK)	<ul> <li>Refres</li> </ul>	sh			
	Total Space	15.60 GB					
	Free Space	15.60 GB					
	Address						
	Name		Size	Туре	Delete	Play	
	🗅 IP			Folder	茴		
	RemoteConfig_20	171103141044.csv	464 B	File	ā		
	printf_201711051	72349.txt	451.3 KB	File	ā		
	kmsg_printf_2017	1105172349.txt	14.9 KB	File	ā		
	New Folder				OK	Back	

Figure 5-182

2) Select the route.

D NOTE

- If there are several USB storage devices are connected to the Device, you can select from the **Device Name** list.
- Click Refresh to total space, free space and the file list in the selected USB storage device.
- In the case of insufficient capacity, click to delete the needless files.
- Click **New Folder** to create a new folder in the USB storage device.
- Click Apply to save the route selection settings. The Test interface is displayed again.

Step 5 Click with to start packet capturing and backing up.

- Only the data packet of one LAN can be captured at one time.
- After capturing starts, you can exit the **Test** interface to perform other operations such as web login and monitoring.

Step 6 Click

to stop capturing.

The backup data is saved in the selected route under the naming style "LAN name-time.pcap." See Figure 5-183. You can open it by using Wireshark software.

Brow	se						
	-						
	Device Name	sda5(USB DISK)	Refres	sh			
	Total Space						
	Free Space	15.60 GB					
	Address	1					
	Name		Size	Туре	Delete	Play	
	D IP			Folder	亩		
	RemoteConfig_20	171103141044.csv	464 B	File	茴		
	printf_2017110517	72349.txt	451.3 KB	File	亩		
	kmsg_printf_2017	1105172349.txt	14.9 KB	File	ā		
	LAN1-2017110713	35215.pcap	1.18 MB	File	茴		
	New Folder				OK	Back	

Figure 5-183

# 5.15 Configuring Account Settings

You can add, modify and delete user accounts, groups, and ONVIF users, and set security questions for admin account.

- The user name supports 31 characters and group name supports 15 characters. The user name can be consisted of letter, number, "\_", "@", ".".
- You can set maximum 64 users and 20 groups. The group name by "User" and "Admin" cannot be deleted. You can set other groups and define the relevant permissions. However, the admin account cannot be set randomly.
- You can manage the account by user and group and the name cannot be repeated. Every user must belong to a group, and one user only belongs to one group.

# 5.15.1 Configuring User Account

### 5.15.1.1 Adding a User Account

# Step 1 Select Main Menu > ACCOUNT > USER.

The **USER** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-184.
	上 account								LIVE	<u>.</u>	🔁 🗸 🛱
>	USER										
	GROUP		User Name		Modify		MAC A	Memo			
			admin	admin		Login Local		admin 's ac			
	ONVIF USER										
		Add l	loor								
		Auu t									

Figure 5-184

#### Step 2 Click Add User.

The **Add User** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-185.

Add User					
User Name					
Password			Confirm Password		
Memo			User MAC		
Group admin					
Period	Setting				
Authority					
System Pla	yback Monitor				
III					
ACCOUNT	🔽 SY		SYSTEM INFO	MANUAL CONTROL	
STORAGE	EV				
SECURITY	🗹 BA	СКОР			
				OK Back	

Figure 5-185

Step 3 Configure the settings for the parameters of adding a user account. See Table 5-65.

Parameter	Description
User Name	Enter a user name and necessary for the appount
Password	Enter a user name and password for the account.
Confirm Password	Re-enter the password.

Mama	Optional.
Memo	Enter a description of the account.
User MAC	Enter user MAC address
	Select a group for the account.
Group	NOTE NOTE
	The user rights must be within the group permission.
	Click Set to display Set interface.
Period	Define a period during which the new account can login the device.
Fellou	The new account cannot login the device during the time beyond
	the set period.
	In the Authority area, select the check boxes in the System tab,
	Playback tab, and Monitor tab.
Authority	NOTE NOTE
Additionity	To manage the user account easily, when defining the user
	account authority, it is recommended not to give the authority to the
	common user account higher that the advanced user account.
	Table 5-65

<u>Step 4</u> Click **OK** to complete the settings.

### Setting Permitted Period

#### <u>Step 1</u> Next to **Period**, click **Setting**.

The **Setting** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-186.





<u>Step 2</u> Define the permitted period. By default, it is active all the time.

- Define the period by drawing.
  - ♦ Define for a specified day of a week: On the timeline, click the half-hour blocks to select the active period.

switches to P. On the timeline of any selected day, click the half-hour blocks

to select the active periods, all the days with 🔤 will take the same settings.

♦ Define for all days of a week: Click **All**, all the **switches** to **switches**. On the

timeline of any day, click the half-hour blocks to select the active periods, all the days will take the same settings.

- Define the period by editing. Take Sunday as an example.
- 1) Click 🛄.

The **Period** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-187.

Period	
Current Date:	Sunday
Period 1	00:00 - 24:00
Period 2	00:00 - 24:00
Period 3	00:00 - 24:00
Period 4	00:00 - 24:00
Period 5	00:00 - 24:00
Period 6	00:00 - 24:00
Сору	
🖂 Sunday	🗌 Monday 🔄 Tuesday 📄 Wednesday 📄 Thursday 📄 Friday 📄 Saturday
	OK Back

Figure 5-187

- 2) Enter the time frame for the period and select the check box to enable the settings.
  - $\diamond$   $\;$  There are six periods for you to set for each day.
  - ♦ Under Copy, select All to apply the settings to all the days of a week, or select specific day(s) that you want to apply the settings to.
- 3) Click **OK** to save the settings.

Step 3 Click OK.

#### 5.15.1.2 Modify a User Account

#### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ACCOUNT > USER.

The **USER** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-188.

	🔔 ACCOUNT									LIVE	<u>.</u>	🔁 - ன
	USER		4	1 I NI		NA116	Delete	01-1	M			
	GROUP			User Name admin	admin	Modify		Status Login Local	Memo admin 's ac	count		
	ONVIF USER							Login Local				
		1	Add U	ser								

Figure 5-188

<u>Step 2</u> Click for the user account that you want to modify.

The Modify User interface is displayed. See Figure 5-189.

Modify User		
User Name admin		User MAC
Modify Password		Email Address 2***@qq.com
Old Password		Group admin 💌
New Password		Memo admin 's account
Confirm Password		Unlock Pattern
Prompt Question 1		Security Questions
Authority		
System Playback	Monitor	
II AII		
ACCOUNT	SYSTEM	SYSTEM INFO MANUAL CONTROL
SECURITY	BACKUP	DEVICE MAINTENANCE
		OK Back

Figure 5-189

<u>Step 3</u> Change the settings for password, user name, user group, user MAC, memo, period, and authority.

The new password can be set from 8 digits through 32 digits and contains at least two types from number, letter and special characters (excluding"", """, ";", ":" and "&").

For the admin account, you can enter or modify email address, enable/disable the unlock pattern, modify the security questions.

- In the Email Address box, enter the email address, and the click Save to save the setting.
- To use the unlock pattern, enable **Unlock Pattern**, click **I**, draw a pattern in the **Unlock Pattern** interface, and then click **Save** to save the setting.
- Configuring security questions.
- 1) Click Security Questions.

The **Security Questions** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-190.

Security Quest	ions
Successfull	y set. Please delete it first if you want to reset security question!again.
Question 1 Answer	
Question 2 Answer	
Question 3 Answer	
	Setting Delete

Figure 5-190

2) In the **Question** list, select questions and enter the answers in the Answer box.

 Click Setting to save the settings. You can use the security questions and answers to reset the password for admin account.

NOTE

To reset the security questions, on the **Security Questions**, enter the correct answers for each question, and then click **Delete**.

<u>Step 4</u> Click **OK** to complete the settings.

## 5.15.1.3 Deleting a User Account

#### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ACCOUNT > USER.

The **USER** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-191.

	上 ACCOUNT									LIVE	•	🔁 🚽 📴
;	USER											
	GROUP		User Name admin	Group admin	Modify		Status Login Local	MAC A	Memo admin 's ac	count		
	ONVIF USER		aannin	aannin			Login Local		aunin sac	count		
		Add U	ser									
				Fig	uro 5	_101						

Figure 5-191

for the user account that you want to delete. Step 2 Click A Message is displayed. <u>Step 3</u> Click **OK** to delete a user account.

# 5.15.2 Configuring Group Account

## 5.15.2.1 Adding a Group

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ACCOUNT > GROUP. The **GROUP** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-192.

	La Account							LIVE	
	USER		2	Group Name	Modify	۵	Delete	Memo	
>	GROUP			admin	j.			administrator group	
	ONVIF USER			user	ř		亩	user group	
		A	dd G	iroup					

Figure 5-192

#### Step 2 Click Add Group.

The Add Group interface is displayed. See Figure 5-193.

Add Group			
Group Name Memo Authority			
System Playback	Monitor	<ul> <li>☐ SYSTEM INFO</li> <li>☐ NETWORK</li> <li>☐ DEVICE MAINTENANCE</li> </ul>	MANUAL CONTROL CAMERA
			OK Back

Figure 5-193

Step 3 Configure the settings for the parameters of adding a group. See Table 5-66.
---

Parameter	Description			
Group Name	Enter a name for the group.			
Momo	Optional.			
Memo	Enter a description of the account.			

Parameter	Description			
Authority	In the <b>Authority</b> area, select the check boxes in the <b>System</b> tab,			
	Playback tab, and Monitor tab.			

Table 5-66

<u>Step 4</u> Click **OK** to complete the settings.

## 5.15.2.2 Modifying a Group

#### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ACCOUNT > GROUP.

The **GROUP** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-194.

💄 ACCOUNT				
USER				
> GROUP	2 Group Name	Modify	Delete	Memo
	1 admin			administrator group
ONVIF USER	2 user	ľ	ā	user group
	Add Group			
		iguro 5 104		

Figure 5-194

Step 2 Click for the group account that you want to modify.

<u>Step 3</u> The **Modify Group** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-195.

Modify Group			
Group	user -		
Group Name	user		
Memo	user group		
Authority			
System Playba	ack Monitor		
☐ AII ☐ ACCOUNT ☐ STORAGE ☐ SECURITY	SYSTEM EVENT BACKUP	SYSTEM INFO NETWORK DEVICE MAINTENANCE	MANUAL CONTROL
			OK Back

Figure 5-195

Step 4 Change the settings for group name, memo, and authority.

 $\underline{Step \ 5}$  Click OK to complete the settings.

## 5.15.2.3 Deleting a Group

#### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ACCOUNT > GROUP.

The **GROUP** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-196.

	💄 account					LIVE	()
	USER						
>	GROUP	2	Group Name	Modify	Delete	Memo	
ŕ			admin			administrator group	
	ONVIF USER		user	j.	亩	user group	
		Add G	àroup				

Figure 5-196

Step 2 Click for the user account that you want to delete.

A **Message** is displayed.

<u>Step 3</u> Click **OK** to delete a group.

## 5.15.3 Configuring Onvif Users

The device manufactured by other company can connect to the Device through Onvif protocol by an authorized Onvif account.

NOTE

The admin account is created for Onvif users right after the Device has been initialized <u>Step 1</u> Select **Main Menu > ACCOUNT > ONVIF USER**.

The ONVIF USER interface is displayed. See Figure 5-197.

	💄 ACCOUNT						LIVE	
	USER							
	GROUP			User Name admin	Group Name admin	Modify	Delete 亩	
,	ONVIF USER			admin	dumm	,		
		A	dd U	ser				

Figure 5-197

Step 2 Click Add User.

The Add User interface is displayed. See Figure 5-198.

Add User			
User			123
Password			
Confirm Password			
Group	admin		
		ОК	Back

Figure 5-198

<u>Step 3</u> Enter user name, password, and select the group that you want this account to belong to.



# 5.16 Audio Management

Audio management function manages audio files and configures the playing schedule. When there is an alarm event, the audio file can be activated.

# 5.16.1 Configuring Audio Files

You can add audio files, listen to audio files, rename and delete audio files, and configure the audio volume.

Step 1 Select Main Menu > AUDIO > FILE MANAGER.

The FILE MANAGER interface is displayed. See Figure 5-199.

	AUDIO						LIVE	L 🕞 -	<b>P</b> 0 8.8
	SCHEDULE					5			
>	FILE MANAGER		File Name	Size	Play	Rename	Delete		
							•		
		VOICE	: HDD Mode		Volume		•		
							Ad	d	

Figure 5-199

#### Step 2 Click Add.

The **Add** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-200.

Device Name	sdb5(USB DISK)	Refresh			
Total Space	15.60 GB				
Free Space	15.59 GB				
Address					
Name		Size	Туре	Delete	
IP			Folder	茴	
FSU6016U			Folder	ā	
RemoteConfig_20	171103141044.csv	464 B	File	茴	
📄 📄 printf_201711051	72349.txt	451.3 KB	File	<del>南</del>	
📄 🖹 kmsg_printf_2017	1105172349.txt	14.9 KB	File	Ē	
EAN1-201711071	35215.pcap	1.18 MB	File	亩	
E LAN1-201711091	5008.pcap	9.16 MB	File	ā	
📄 🗈 softmusic.mp3		2.14 MB	File	Ē	-
			OK	Back	

 $\underline{Step \ 3} \quad Select \ the \ audio \ files \ that \ you \ want \ to \ import.$ 

<u>Step 4</u> Click **OK** to start importing audio files from the USB storage device.

If the importing is successful, the audio files will display in the **FILE MANAGER** interface. See Figure 5-201.

Schedule     I File Name Size Play Rename Delete     I softmusic.mp3 2.14 MB     I softmusic.mp3 2.14 MB     I softmusic.mp3     I softmusic.mp3 <th>AUDIO</th> <th></th> <th></th> <th></th> <th>LIVE 💄 🕞 🗸 🔡</th> <th></th>	AUDIO				LIVE 💄 🕞 🗸 🔡	
> FILE MANAGER       1 sottmusic.mp3       2.14 MB	SCHEDULE					
	7 FILE MANAGER	1 softmusic.mp3	2.14 MB 💿	ľ	ā	
Add		VOICE : HDD Mode	Vol	ume	<b>-</b> • +	
					Add	



The imported audio files are automatically saved into the HDD, so you do not need to connect to the USB storage device to get the file next time.

- Click to play the audio file.
- Click location to rename the audio file.
- Click i to delete the audio file.
- To decrease or increase the playing volume, move the slider to the left or to the right.

# 5.16.2 Configuring Playing Schedule for Audio Files

You can configure the settings to play the audio files during the defined time period.

#### Step 1 Select Main Menu > AUDIO > SCHEDULE.

The **SCHEDULE** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-202.

AUDIO						LIV	e   🚨	₽ <b>.</b>
> SCHEDULE	Period		File Name	Interv	al	Repeat	Output	
FILE MANAGER	00 : 00	- 24 : 00	None	▼ 60	Min.	0	Mic	▼
	00 : 00	- 24 : 00	None	- 60	Min.	0	Mic	•
	00 : 00	- 24 : 00	None	▼ 60	Min.	0	Mic	₹
	00 : 00	- 24 : 00	None	▼ 60	Min.	0	Mic	
	00 : 00	- 24 : 00	None	▼ 60	Min.	0	Mic	
	00 : 00	- 24 : 00	None	▼ 60	Min.	0	Mic	•
						Apply		Back

Figure 5-202

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the schedule parameters. See Table 5-67.

Parameter	Description
	In the <b>Period</b> box, enter the time. Select the check box to enable
Period	the settings.
	You can configure up to six periods.
File Name	In the File Name list, select the audio file that you want to play for
	this configured period.
Interval	In the Interval box, enter the time in minutes for how often you
Interval	want to repeat the playing.
Papaat	Configure how many times you want to repeat the playing in the
Repeat	defined period.
	Includes two options: MIC and Audio. It is MIC by default. The MIC
Output	function shares the same port with talkback function and the latter
	has the priority.

Table 5-67

- The finish time for audio playing is decided by audio file size and the configured interval.
- Playing priority: Alarm event > Talkback > Trial listening > Audio file.

# 5.17 Storage Management

Storage management function manages the stored resources such as recorded video files and storage space. The function aims at providing easier operation and improving the storage efficiency.

# 5.17.1 Configuring Basic Settings

#### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > STORAGE > BASIC.

The **BASIC** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-203.

	E STORAGE				LIVE	
>	BASIC					
	SCHEDULE	HDD Full Pack Mode		<b>60</b> Min.		
	HDD MANAGER ADVANCE QUOTA HDD DETECT REC ESTIMATE FTP	Pack Mode Auto-Delete Old Files		60 Min.		
		Default			Apply	Back

Figure 5-203

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the basic settings parameters. See Table 5-68.

Parameter	Description					
	Configure the settings for the situation all the read/write discs are					
	full, and there is no more free disc.					
HDD Full	Select Stop Record to stop recording					
	• Select <b>Overwrite</b> to overwrite the recorded video files					
	always from the earliest time.					
Pack Mode	Configure the time length and file length for each recorded video.					
Auto Doloto Old Filos	Configure whether to delete the old files and if yes, configure the					
Auto-Delete Old Files	N days.					

Table 5-68

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

# 5.17.2 Configuring the Recording and Snapshot Schedule

The system starts recording and taking snapshot according to the configured schedule. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule" and "5.1.4.10 Configuring Snapshot Storage Schedule"

# 5.17.3 Configuring HDD Manager

You can view the HDD information, format HDD, and configure the HDD type through HDD manager.

#### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > STORAGE > HDD MANAGER.

The HDD MANAGER interface is displayed. See Figure 5-204.

In the table, you can view the information of current HDD, such as device name, HDD type, status, total space and free space, and serial number of the HDD port.

	<b>31</b> , ,	•	• •		•
	🚔 STORAGE				LIVE 💄 💽 🚽 🔡
	BASIC	SATA 1234567	, o		
	SCHEDULE	0 0 -			
>	HDD MANAGER	ESATA 9 10 11 12 13		TA	
	ADVANCE	ESATA 9 TO TT 12 TS			
	QUOTA				
	QUOTA	2 Device Name	Туре	Status	Free Space/Total Space
	HDD DETECT	All -			2.89 TB/3.63 TB
	REC ESTIMATE	1* SATA-3	Read/Write -	Normal	918.54 GB/931.40 GB
		2 SATA-6	Read/Write -	Normal	1.99 TB/2.72 TB
	FTP				
		Refresh Format			Apply Back

Figure 5-204

<u>Step 2</u> Configuring the settings for the HDD manager.

- HDD type setting: In the **Type** list, select **Read/Write**, **Read-Only** or **Redundant**, and then click **Apply** to save the settings.
- HDD format: Select the HDD that you want to format, click **Format**, in the pop-up message, click **OK** to start formatting, and then following the onscreen message to complete formatting.

# 5.17.4 Configuring HDD Group

You can configure the HDD group to save the specified main stream, sub stream and snapshots to the designated HDD group.



- If "Current HDD Mode is Quota Mode" is shown on the interface, you need to switch to HDD mode.
- You can enable either HDD Mode or Quota Mode at one time. The system reboots to activate the settings.

#### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > STORAGE > ADVANCE.

The ADVANCE interface is displayed. See Figure 5-205.

E STORAGE					LIVE	🚨 🕞 🗕 🚟
BASIC	HDD	Main Stream	Sub Stream	Snapshot		
SCHEDULE	Current HDD M	lode is HDD Group.				
HDD MANAGER						
> ADVANCE		Device Name			Group	
QUOTA				-	<b>*</b>	
QUUTA						
HDD DETECT						
REC ESTIMATE						
FTP						
		9 10				
		11				
		12				
		13				
		14				
					Save	Cancel

Figure 5-205

- <u>Step 2</u> Select the group for each HDD group, and then click **Save** to save the settings.
- <u>Step 3</u> After configuring HDD group, under the **Main Stream** tab, **Sub Stream** tab and **Snapshot** tab, configure settings to save the main stream, sub stream and snapshot to different HDD group as selected by you. See Figure 5-206, Figure 5-207, and Figure 5-208.

🔔 STORAGE									LIVE	
BASIC	HDD	Ma		Sub Str	eam	Snap	shot			
SCHEDULE	Current H	IDD Mode is	s HDD Group							
HDD MANAGER										
ADVANCE	Set All Ch	nannels 1			All					
QUOTA	Channel	Group	Channel	Group	Channel			annel	Group	
HDD DETECT		1 -		1 -					1 🔻	
REC ESTIMATE		1 -		1 -					1 🔻	
FTP		1 -		1 🔻	11		<ul><li>▼ 12</li></ul>		1 -	
	13	1 -	14	1 -		1			1 -	
									Apply	Cancel

Figure 5-206

	STORAGE											L		<b>1</b>	- <u>PQ</u>
_	BASIC	HDD		Mair	Stream	S	ub Str	eam		apshot					
	SCHEDULE	Current H	DD Mo	deis H	HDD Group	).									
ŀ	HDD MANAGER														
> /	ADVANCE	Set All Ch													
(	QUOTA	Channel	Grou	р	Channel	Grou		Channel	Gro	oup	Channel	Gro	up		
ŀ	HDD DETECT		1			1			1			1			
F	REC ESTIMATE		1			1			1			1			
	FTP		1			1		11	1		12	1			
r	FIP	13	1		14	1			1			1			
												Apply	/	Canc	el



	STORAGE								LIVE	L → . 99
	BASIC	HDD	Mai	n Stream	Sub Str	eam	Snapshot			
	SCHEDULE	Current H	DD Mode is	HDD Group						
	HDD MANAGER									
>	ADVANCE		annels 1							
	QUOTA	Channel	Group	Channel	Group	Channel	Group	Channel	Group	
	HDD DETECT		1 -		1 -		1 -		1 -	
	REC ESTIMATE		1 -		1 -		1 -		1 -	
	FTP		1 -		1 -	11	1 -	12	1 -	
		13	1 -	14	1 =		1 -		1 -	
								_	Angle	0
									Apply	Cancel

Figure 5-208

<u>Step 4</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

# 5.17.5 Configuring HDD Detecting Settings

## 

#### Not all models support this function.

HDD detecting function detects the current status of HDD to let you know the HDD performance and replace the defective HDD.

### 5.17.5.1 Detecting HDD

You can detect HDD by quick detect and global detect.

- Quick detect: Detect the files saved in HDD. The detected bad track can be repaired by formatting. If there are no files in HDD, the system cannot detect the bad track.
- Global detect: Detect the whole HDD through Windows, which takes time and might affect the HDD that is recording the video.

#### Step 1 Select Main Menu > STORAGE > HDD DETECT > Detect.

The **Detect** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-209.



Figure 5-209

<u>Step 2</u> In the **Type** list, select **Quick Detect** or **Global Detect**; and in the **HDD** list, select the HDD that you want to detect.

#### Step 3 Click Start Detect.

The system starts detecting the HDD. After detecting is completed, see Figure 5-210.

During detecting, click **Pause** to pause detecting, click **Continue** to restart detecting, and click **Stop Detect** to stop detecting.



Figure 5-210

## 5.17.5.2 View Detecting Results

After the detecting is completed, you can view the detecting reports to find out the problem and replace the defective HDD to avoid data loss.

#### Step 1 Select Main Menu > STORAGE > HDD DETECT > Report.

The Report interface is displayed. See Figure 5-211.

E STORAGE								<b>90</b>
BASIC	Detect		Report					
SCHEDULE	1 HDD	Port No.	Detect Type	Start Time	Capacity	Error	View	
HDD MANAGER			Quick Detect	2017-11-07	930.51 GB		D	
ADVANCE								
QUOTA								
> HDD DETECT								
REC ESTIMATE								
FTP								

Figure 5-211

Step 2 Click

The **Details** interface is displayed. You can view detecting results and S.M.A.R.T reports. See Figure 5-212 and Figure 5-213.



Figure 5-212

Deta	ails						
Det	tect Results	S.M.A.R.T					
	Port	3					
	Model	WDCWD10PURX-64	E5EY0				
	No.	WD-WCC4J3REU180	)				
	Status	ок					
	Describe:						
	Smart ID	Attribute	Thres	Value	Worst Value	Status	
		Read Error Rate	51	200	200	OK	
	3	Spin Up Time	21	140	108	OK	
	4	Start/Stop Count	0	98	98	ОК	
	5	Reallocated Sector Count	140	200	200	OK	
		Seek Error Rate	0	200	200	ОК	
		Power On Hours Count	0	95	95	OK	-

Figure 5-213

# 5.17.6 Configuring Quota Settings

You can configure the quote for each channel to be saved into each HDD.



- If "Current HDD Mode is HDD Mode" is shown on the interface, you need to switch to Quota mode.
- You can enable either HDD Mode or Quota Mode at one time. The system reboots to activate the settings.

#### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > STORAGE > QUOTA.

The QUOTA interface is displayed. See Figure 5-214.

E STORAGE					LIVE	
BASIC	Current HDD M	ode is HDD Group.	Change to Quota M	Aode		
SCHEDULE						
HDD MANAGER	Channel					
ADVANCE	HDD	Quota	Free Space	HDD	Quota	Free Space
QUOTA	SATA1			SATA2		
HDD DETECT	SATA3			SATA4		
REC ESTIMATE	SATA5			SATA6		
FTP	SATA7			SATA8		
	Statistics				Apply	Cancel

Figure 5-214

- <u>Step 2</u> In the **Channel** list, select the channel that you want to configure.
- $\underline{Step \ 3}$  In the SATA list, select the quota for the selected channel.
- <u>Step 4</u> Click Apply to complete the settings.

Click Statistics to view the quota of each channel. See Figure 5-215.

Ś	Statistics							
	3	Channel	Quota					
		Channel 1	232.86 GB					
	2	Channel 2	465.68 GB					
	3	Other Channels	2.95 TB					

Figure 5-215

# 5.17.7 Configuring Record Estimate

Record estimate function can calculate how long you can record video according to the HDD capacity, and calculate the required HDD capacity according to the record period.

#### Step 1 Select Main Menu > STORAGE > REC ESTIMATE.

 			'					
🚔 STORAGE							LIVE 💄 🕒 🗸	
BASIC								
SCHEDULE	$\checkmark$	Channel	Edit	Bit Rate(Kb/S)	Record Time	Resolution	Frame Rate	
SCHEDULE				4096		2560*1440(2		
HDD MANAGER			1	4096	24	2560*1440(2		
ADVANCE				4096	24	2560*1440(2		
ADVANCE			ĩ	4096	24	2560*1440(2		
QUOTA				4096	24	2560*1440(2		
HDD DETECT			i	4096	24	2560*1440(2		
					24	2560*1440(2		
REC ESTIMATE			1	4096	24	2560*1440(2		
FTP				4096		2560*1440(2		
			1	4096	24	2560*1440(2		
		11				2560*1440(2		
		12	1	4096	24	2560*1440(2		
		13			24	2560*1440(2		
		14	ï	4096	24	2560*1440(2		
						2560*1440(2		
		16	1	4096	24	2560*1440(2		
	Kno	own Space	Known Time					
	Cap	pacity	0	TB =	<b>0</b> GI	B Select		
	Tim	ie		Days				
	Not	e: The reco	ord estimation data l	here is for referen	ce only. Please b	e cautious when y	vou are	
		culating rec						
		uldung i se	ord porrod.					

Figure 5-216



The Edit dialog box is displayed. See Figure 5-217.

You can configure the resolution, frame rate, bit rate and record time for the selected channel.

Edit		
Channel	1	
Resolution	2560*1440(2560x144	40) -
Frame Rate	15	
Bit Rate	4096 (32 - 61	144)Kb/S
Record Time	24	
Сору		OK Back

Figure 5-217



Then the system will calculate the time period that can be used for storage according to the channels settings and HDD capacity.

 Image: NOTE

 Click Copy to copy the settings to other channels.

## **Calculating Recording Time**

<u>Step 1</u> On the **REC ESTIMATE** interface, click the **Known Space** tab. The **Known Space** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-218.





#### Step 2 Click Select.

The Select HDD(s) interface is displayed.

<u>Step 3</u> Select the check box of the HDD that you want to calculate.

In the **Known Space** tab, in the **Time** box, the recording time is displayed. See Figure 5-219.





## Calculating HDD Capacity for Storage

<u>Step 1</u> On the **REC ESTIMATE** interface, click the **Known Time** tab. The **Known Time** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-220.

Known Space	Known Time			
Time	0	Days		
Capacity		TB =		GB
Note: The reco calculating rec	rd estimation data here is for ord period.	referer	nce only. Pleas	e be cautious when you are



<u>Step 2</u> In the **Time** box, enter the time period that you want to record. In the **Capacity** box, the required HDD capacity is displayed. See Figure 5-221.



Figure 5-221

# 5.17.8 Configuring FTP Storage Settings

You can store and view the recorded videos and snapshots on the FTP server.

## Preparation for Configuration

Purchase or download a FTP server and install it on your PC.

D NOTE

For the created FTP user, you need to set the write permission; otherwise the upload of recorded videos and snapshots will be failed.

## **Configuration Steps**

#### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > STORAGE > FTP.

The **FTP** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-222.

E STORAGE			_					₽.	<u>00</u>
BASIC									
SCHEDULE	Enable								
HDD MANAGER	Host IP	0.0.0.0							
ADVANCE	Port	21							
QUOTA	Anonymity								
HDD DETECT	User Name								
REC ESTIMATE	Password								
FTP	Remote Directory								
	File Length(M)	0							
	Image Upload Interval(Sec.)	2							
	Channel	1							
	Week Day	Tue		Alarm	Intel	MD	General		
	Period 1	00:00 - 24:00							
	Period 2	00:00 - 24:00							
	Defeult					<b>A a a</b>		Deek	
	Default Test					App	y	Back	

Figure 5-222

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the FTP settings parameters. See Table 5-69.

Parameter	Description
Enable	Enable the FTP upload function.
Host IP	IP address of the PC that is installed with FTP server.
Port	The default is 21.
Anonymity	Enter the user name and password to login the FTP server.
User Name	Enable the anonymity function, and then you can login
Password	anonymously without entering the user name and password.
Remote Directory	<ul> <li>Create folder on FTP server.</li> <li>If you do not enter the name of remote directory, system automatically creates the folders according to the IP and time.</li> <li>If you enter the name of remote directory, the system creates the folder with the entered name under the FTP root directory first, and then automatically creates the folders according to the IP and time.</li> </ul>
File Length(M)	<ul> <li>Enter the length of the uploaded recorded video.</li> <li>If the entered length is less than the recorded video length, only a section of the recorded video can be uploaded.</li> <li>If the entered length is more than the recorded video length, the whole recorded video can be uploaded.</li> <li>If the entered length is 0, the whole recorded video will be uploaded.</li> </ul>
Image Upload Interval (Sec.)	<ul> <li>If this interval is longer than snapshot interval, the system takes the recent snapshot to upload. For example, the interval is 5 seconds, and snapshot interval is 2 seconds per snapshot, the system uploads the recent snapshot every 5 seconds.</li> <li>If this interval is shorter than snapshot interval, the system uploads the snapshot per the snapshot interval. For example, the interval is 5 seconds, and snapshot interval is 10 seconds per snapshot, the system uploads the snapshot per snapshot states and snapshot interval is 10 seconds.</li> <li>To configure the snapshot interval, select Main Menu &gt; CAMERA &gt; ENCODE &gt; Snapshot.</li> </ul>
Channel	Select the channel that you want to apply the FTP settings.
Week Day	Select the week day and set the time period that you want to
Period 1, Period 2	upload the recorded files. You can set two periods for each week day.
Record type	Select the record type (Alarm, Intel, MD, and General) that you want to upload. The selected record type will be uploaded during the configured time period. Table 5-69

Table 5-69

Step 3 Click Test.

The system pops up a message to indicate success or failure. If failed, please check the network connection or configurations.

<u>Step 4</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

# 5.18 Configuring System Settings

# 5.18.1 Configuring General System Settings

You can configure the device basic settings, time settings, and holiday settings.

For details about basic and time settings, see "5.1.4.2 Configuring General Settings" and "5.1.4.3 Configuring Date and Time Settings."

To configure the holiday settings, do the following:

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > GENERAL > Holiday.

The Holiday interface is displayed. See Figure 5-223.

	🔅 SYSTEM						LIVE	🗢 🖌 💭
>	GENERAL	General		Date&Time	Holiday			
	RS232		Status	Name	Date	Period	Operation	
	SECURITY							
	SYSTEM MAINTAIN							
	IMP/EXP							
	DEFAULT							
	UPGRADE							
							Add a Holiday	

Figure 5-223

Step 2 Click Add a Holiday.

The Add a Holiday interface is displayed. See Figure 5-224.

Add a Holiday					
Holiday Name					
Repeat Mode	⊖ Once		💿 Always		
Holiday Range	💿 Date		⊖ Week		
Start Time		- 11	- 09		
End Time		- 11	- 09		
Add More					
				Add	Cancel

Figure 5-224

- <u>Step 3</u> Configure the holiday name, repeat mode, time range according to your actual situation.
- Step 4 Click Add.

The added holiday information is displayed. See Figure 5-225.

NOTE

Enable the Add More function, so you can continue adding holiday information.

🔅 SYSTEM					LIVE 💄 🕂 🕂 🛱	
GENERAL	General	Date&Time	Holiday			
RS232	1 S	itatus Name	Date	Period	Operation	
SECURITY		newyear	2017 Dec The L	7 day(s)		
SYSTEM MAINTAIN						
IMP/EXP						
DEFAULT						
UPGRADE						
					Add a Holiday	

Figure 5-225

# 5.18.2 Configuring RS232 Port Settings

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > STORAGE > RS232.

	🗱 SYSTEM			
	GENERAL	Function	Console	
>	RS232	Baudrate	115200	
	SECURITY	Data Bits	8	
	SYSTEM MAINTAIN	Stop Bits	1	
	IMP/EXP		' None	
	DEFAULT	Parity	None	
	UPGRADE			
		Default		Apply Back

The **RS232** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-226.

Figure 5-226

010		II. L DO000		See Table 5-70.
Ston 7	a contiguira tha ca	$\pi$	nort naramatare	Saa Iania 5.70
			port parameters.	$OCC$ Table $J^{-}I U$ .
	ooningaro aro oo	ange for reeled	por parametero.	

Parameter	Description
	<ul> <li>In the Function list, select the protocol for the port.</li> <li>Console: Debug by connecting a mini terminal software.</li> <li>Keyboard: Control the Device by connecting a dedicated keyboard.</li> <li>Adapter: Transit data by connecting to PC.</li> </ul>
Function	<ul> <li>Protocol COM: This function is for card overlay.</li> <li>NetKeyboard: Control the Device by connecting a dedicated keyboard to the LAN port.</li> <li>PTZ Matrix: Connect the video matrix for control.</li> <li>The default setting is <b>Console</b>.</li> </ul>
Baudrate	In the <b>Baudrate</b> list, select a value for baudrate length. The default setting is <b>115200</b> .
Data Bits	In the <b>Data Bits</b> list, select <b>5</b> , <b>6</b> , <b>7</b> , or <b>8</b> . The default setting is <b>8</b> .
Stop Bits	In the Stop Bits list, select 1, 1.5, or 2.
Parity	In the <b>Parity</b> list, select <b>None</b> , <b>Odd</b> , <b>Even</b> , <b>Mark</b> , or <b>Null</b> . The default setting is <b>None</b> .

Table 5-70

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

# 5.18.3 Configuring Security Settings

To ensure the network security and protect data, you can configure the access permission to the Device from host IP (host IP means the PC or server that has an IP).

- White list includes the host IP that are permitted to access the Device.
- Back list includes the host IP that are not permitted to access the Device.
- Updata time white list includes the host IP that are permitted to sync the Device time.

## 5.18.3.1 Configuring Access Right

#### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > SYSTEM > SECURITY > Access Right. The Access Right interface is displayed. See Figure 5-227.

	J -	•	,	5	-		
🔅 SYSTEM						LIVE	
GENERAL	Access Right	Password Reset					
RS232	Туре	Limits of	network-whitelist				
SECURITY	Enable						
SYSTEM MAINTAIN	Start Address				Add IP Address		
IMP/EXP	End Address				Add IP Segment		
DEFAULT		Start Address		End A	ddress	Edit	Delete
UPGRADE				LIGA		Lart	Delete
						Apply	Back

Figure 5-227

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for	the security parameters. See Table 5-71.
--	--

Parameter Description				
Turne	In the Type list, you can select Limits of network-whitelist, Limits			
Туре	of network-blacklist, or Updata time-whitelist.			
Enable Enable the security settings.				
	Enter a single IP address or a start IP address of a network			
Start Address	segment.			
Add IP Address Click Add IP Address to add a single IP address.				
End Address Enter the end IP address of a network segment.				

	Click Add IP Segment to add the IP addresses from the start IP
Add ID Cogmont	through the end IP.
Add IP Segment	NOTE NOTE
	The system supports up to 64 IP addresses.

Table 5-71

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

## 5.18.3.2 Enabling Password Reset

Select Main Menu > SYSTEM > SECURITY > Password Reset, the Password Reset interface is displayed. The Enable check box is selected by default. See Figure 5-228.

# 

If you clear the **Enable** check box, you can only use the security questions to reset the password. Make sure you have set the security questions before clearing the check box.

🔅 SYSTEM		LIVE 🕹 🚱 💀
GENERAL	Access Right	Password Reset
RS232	🔽 Enable	
> SECURITY		
SYSTEM MAINTAIN		
IMP/EXP		
DEFAULT		
UPGRADE		
		Apply Back

Figure 5-228

# 5.18.4 Configuring System Maintenance Settings

When the Device has been running for a long time, you can configure the auto reboot when the Device is not working. You can also configure the case fan mode to reduce noise and extend the service life.

#### Step 1 Select Main Menu > SYSTEM > SYSTEM MAINTAIN.

The **SYSTEM MAINTAIN** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-229.



Figure 5-229

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the system maintenance parameters. See Table 5-72.

Parameter	Description		
Auto Reboot	In the Auto Reboot list, select the reboot time.		
Case Fan Mode	In the <b>Case Fan Mode</b> list, you can select <b>Always run</b> or <b>Auto</b> . If you select <b>Auto</b> , the case fan will stop or start according to the external conditions such as the Device temperature.		
	Not all models support this function, and it is only supported on		
	the local configuration interface.		

Table 5-72

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

# 5.18.5 Exporting and Importing System Settings

You can export or import the Device system settings if there are several Devices that require the same setup.

III NOTE

- The **IMP/EXP** interface cannot be opened if the backup operation is ongoing on the other interfaces.
- When you open the **IMP/EXP** interface, the system refreshes the devices and sets the current directory as the first root directory.
- Click Format to format the USB storage device.

## **Exporting System Settings**

# Step 1 Select Main Menu > SYSTEM > IMP/EXP.

The IMP/EXP interface is	displayed.	See Figure 5-230.
--------------------------	------------	-------------------

🗱 system			LIVE	
GENERAL RS232 SECURITY SYSTEM MAINTAIN	Device Name Total Space Free Space	Refresh	Format	
IMP/EXP	Address			
DEFAULT UPGRADE	Name	Size	Туре С	Delete
	New Folder		Import	Export

Figure 5-230

<u>Step 2</u> Insert a USB storage device into one of the USB ports on the Device.

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Refresh** to refresh the interface.

The connected USB storage device is displayed. See Figure 5-231.

🔅 SYSTEM						
GENERAL	Device Name	sdb5(USB DISK)	Refresh	Format		
RS232 SECURITY	Total Space	15.60 GB				
SYSTEM MAINTAIN	Free Space	15.41 GB				
> IMP/EXP	Address					
DEFAULT	Name		Size	Туре	Delete	
UPGRADE	🗅 IP			Folder		
of all ADE	🗖 FSU6016U			Folder	茴	
	IVSS			Folder		
	RemoteConfig	RemoteConfig_20171103141044.csv		File	亩	
	printf_2017110	95172349.txt	451.3 KB	File		
	kmsg_printf_2	0171105172349.txt	14.9 KB	File		
	■ LAN1-2017110	7135215.pcap	1.18 MB	File		
	■ LAN1-2017110	LAN1-20171109135008.pcap				
	softmusic.mp3		2.14 MB	File		
	Iemontree.mp3	3	6.66 MB	File	亩	
	VID_20171105	_135734.mp4	43.60 MB	File		
	printf_2017111	3101348.txt	30.29 MB	File		
	📄 IP PTZ Camera	a_20171116100220_201711	527.2 KB	File		
	printf_2017111	7110546.txt	19.91 MB	File	亩	
	kmsg_printf_20	0171117110546.txt	14.8 KB	File		
	iii kinsg_piniu_20	J1/TTT/TT0540.tXt	14.0 ND	File		ľ
	New Folder			_Im	port Exp	ort



#### Step 4 Click Export.

There is a folder under the name style of "Config\_[YYYYMMDDhhmmss]". Double-click this folder to view the backup files.

#### Importing System Settings

- <u>Step 1</u> Insert a USB storage device containing the exported configuration files from another Device) into one of the USB ports on the Device.
- <u>Step 2</u> Select Main Menu > SYSTEM > IMP/EXP. The IMP/EXP interface is displayed.
- <u>Step 3</u> Click **Refresh** to refresh the interface.

The connected USB storage device is displayed.

- <u>Step 4</u> Click on the configuration folder (under the name style of "Config\_[YYYYMMDDhhmmss]") that you want to import.
- Step 5 Click Import.

The Device will reboot after the imported is succeeded.

# 5.18.6 Restoring Default Settings

## D NOTE

Only Admin account supports this function.

You can select the settings that you want to restore to the factory default.

#### Step 1 Select Main Menu > SYSTEM > DEFAULT.

The **DEFAULT** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-232.
	🔅 SYSTEM						LIVE	<u>.</u>	● <b>-</b> ₽	0
	GENERAL	Please	select setting entrie	es that you wa	nt to default					
	RS232	T Touse	soloci setang enare							
	SECURITY		Select All							
	SYSTEM MAINTAIN		CAMERA							
	IMP/EXP		EVENT							
>	DEFAULT		SYSTEM							
	UPGRADE		NETWORK							
			STORAGE							
		Facto	ry Default				Apply	В	ack	

Figure 5-232

<u>Step 2</u> Restore the settings.

- Select the settings that you want to restore, and then click **Apply**. The system starts restoring the selected settings.
- Click **Factory Default**, and then click **OK**. The system starts restoring the whole settings.

### 5.18.7 Upgrading the Device

### 5.18.7.1 Upgrading File

- <u>Step 1</u> Insert a USB storage device containing the upgrade files into the USB port of the Device.
- <u>Step 2</u> Select Main Menu > SYSTEM > UPGRADE. The UPGRADE interface is displayed. See Figure 5-233.



Figure 5-233

#### Step 3 Click System Upgrade.

The System Upgrade interface is displayed. See Figure 5-234.

System Upgrade				
Device Name	sdb5(USB DISK)	Refresh		
Total Space	15.60 GB			
Free Space	15.60 GB			
Address				
Name		Size	Туре	Delete
D IP			Folder	
RemoteConfig_20	171103141044.csv	464 B	File	
printf_201711051	72349.txt	451.3 KB	File	
kmsg_printf_2017	1105172349.txt	14.9 KB	File	茴
E LAN1-201711071	35215.pcap	1.18 MB	File	
Update File				
			Start	Back

Figure 5-234

<u>Step 4</u> Click the file that you want to upgrade.

The selected file is displayed in the Update File box.

Step 5 Click Start.

#### 5.18.7.2 Performing Online Upgrade

When the Device is connected to Internet, you can use online upgrade function to upgrade the system.

Before using this function, you need to check if there is any new version by auto check or manual check.

- Auto check: The Device checks if there is any new version available at intervals.
- Manual check: Perform real-time check if there is any new version available.



Ensure the correct power supply and network connection during upgrading; otherwise the upgrading might be failed.

Step 1 Select Main Menu > SYSTEM > UPGRADE.

The UPGRADE interface is displayed. See Figure 5-235.

	🔅 SYSTEM		LIVE	1	🔁 - 📖
	GENERAL				
	RS232	File Upgrade			
	SECURITY	If you need to upgrade system now,please insert USB upgrade disk,then press the start button to start upgrade.Don't shut down the power during upgrade!			
	SENSOR	ean reaton te san tapy anotest terret actin are peret annig apy and.			
	SYSTEM MAINTAIN	System Upgrade			
	IMP/EXP	Online Upgrade			
	DEFAULT	Auto-check for updates			
>	UPGRADE	System Version 4.0.0000000.0 Build Date 2017-11-01 Manual Check			
		It is the latest version			

Figure 5-235

<u>Step 2</u> Check if there is any new version available.

- Auto check: Enable Auto-check for updates.
- Manual check: Click Manual Check.

The system starts checking the new versions. After checking is completed, the check result is displayed.

- If the "It is the latest version" text is displayed, you do not need to upgrade.
- If the text indicating there is a new version, please go the step 3. See Figure 5-236.



Figure 5-236



### 5.18.7.3 Uboot Upgrading



- Under the root directory in the USB storage device, there must be "u-boot.bin.img" file and "update.img" file saved, and the USB storage device must be in FAT32 format.
- Make sure the USB storage device is inserted; otherwise the upgrading cannot be performed.

When starting the Device, the system automatically check if there is a USB storage device connected and if there is any upgrade file, and if yes and the check result of the upgrade file is correct, the system will upgrade automatically. The Uboot upgrade can avoid the situation that you have to upgrade through +TFTP when the Device is halted.

# 5.19 Viewing Information

You can view the information such as log information, HDD information, and version details

### 5.19.1 Viewing Version Details

You can view the version details such as device model, system version, and build date. Select **Main Menu > INFO > VERSION**, the **VERSION** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-237.



Figure 5-237

# 5.19.2 Viewing Log Information

You can view and search the log information.

D NOTE

- If there is no HDD installed, the system can save up to 10,000 logs.
- If there is HDD installed and has been formatted, the system can save up to 500,000 logs.
- If there is HDD installed, the logs about system operations are saved in the memory of the Device and other types of logs are saved into the HDD. If there is no HDD installed, the other types of logs are also saved in the memory of the Device.
- When formatting the HDD, the logs will not be lost. However, if you take out the HDD from the Device, the logs might be lost.

<u>Step 1</u> Select **Main Menu > INFO > LOG**, the **LOG** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-238.

	INFO				
	VERSION	Turne	All		
>	LOG	Type Start Time	All 2017-12-06	00.00.00	
	EVENT				
	NETWORK	End Time	2017-12-07	00:00:00	Search
	HDD	0 Log Time	Event		
	DEVICE STATUS				
	CHANNEL INFO				
	BPS				
					ackup Details
					Clear

Figure 5-238

- <u>Step 2</u> In the **Type** list, select the log type that you want to view (**System**, **Config**, **Storage**, **Record**, **Account**, **Clear**, **Playback**, and **Connection**) or select **All** to view all logs.
- <u>Step 3</u> In the **Start Time** box and **End Time** box, enter the time period to search, and then click **Search**.

The search results are displayed. See Figure 5-239.

	INFO		LIVE	
	VERSION	Туре	All	
>	LOG			
	EVENT	Start Time	2017-11-02 00:00:00	
		End Time	2017-11-03 00:00:00 S	earch
	NETWORK	100 Log Time	Event	
	HDD	86 2017-11-02 1	19:23:08 Save <registration> config!</registration>	
	DEVICE STATUS	87 2017-11-02 1	19:23:08 Save <registration> config!</registration>	
	DEVICEOTATOO	88 2017-11-02 1	19:23:09 Channel10 User logged out.	
	CHANNEL INFO	89 2017-11-02 1	19:23:11 Channel10 User logged in.	
	BPS	90 2017-11-02 1	19:26:28 Save < Registration > config!	
		91 2017-11-02 1	19:26:28 Save < Registration > config!	
		92 2017-11-02 1	19:26:28 Save < Registration > config!	
		93 2017-11-02 1	19:26:28 Save < Registration > config!	
		94 2017-11-02 1	19:26:29 Channel10 User logged out.	
		95 2017-11-02 1	19:26:31 Channel10 User logged in.	
		96 2017-11-02 1	19:29:51 Save < Registration > config!	
		97 2017-11-02 1	19:29:51 Save < Registration > config!	
		98 2017-11-02 1	19:29:51 Save < Registration > config!	
		99 2017-11-02 1	19:29:51 Save < Registration > config!	
		100 2017-11-02 1	19:29:51 Channel10 User logged out.	-
			< 1/2 > Go To 1 Backup D	etails
				Clear

Figure 5-239

NOTE

- Click **Details** or double-click the log that you want to view, the **Detailed Information** interface is displayed. Click **Next** or **Previous** to view more log information.
- Click **Backup** to back up the logs into the USB storage device.
- Click Clear to remove all logs.

### 5.19.3 Viewing Event Information

You can view the event information of the Device and channel.

Select Main Menu > INFO > EVENT, the EVENT interface is displayed. See Figure 5-240.

	INFO					LIVE	<b>.</b>	₽.	99
	VERSION								
	LOG	Alarm Type Video Loss	1345789	10 11 12	Alarm Status				
>	EVENT	Motion Detect	2 6	10 11 12					
	NETWORK	Net Disconnection	Net Disconnect						
	HDD								
	DEVICE STATUS								
	CHANNEL INFO								
	BPS								
		Refresh							
					*				

Figure 5-240

### 5.19.4 Viewing Network Information

You can view the online users, network data transmission details, and test network. For details about testing network, see "5.14.2.1 Testing the Network."

### 5.19.4.1 Viewing Online Users

You can view the online user information and block any user for a period of time.

Select **Main Menu > INFO > NETWORK > Online users**, the **Online users** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-241.

	INFO					LIVE 🚨 🖸	
	VERSION	Online User	Network Load	Network Te	est		
	LOG						
	EVENT	User N		IP	User Login Time	Block	
	NETWORK	adm	in 192	2.168.12.133	2017-12-06 17:01:50	20	
ŀ	HDD						
	DEVICE STATUS						
	CHANNEL INFO						
	BPS						
		Block	60	Sec.			

Figure 5-241

To block an online user, click and then enter the time that you want to block this user. The maximum value you can set is 65535.

The system detects every 5 seconds to check if there is any user added or deleted, and update the user list timely.

#### 5.19.4.2 Viewing the Network Load

Network load means the data flow which measures the transmission capability. You can view the information such as data receiving speed and sending speed.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > INFO > NETWORK > Network Load.

The Network Load interface is displayed. See Figure 5-242.



Figure 5-242

Step 2 Click the LAN name that you want to view, for example, LAN1.

The system displays the information of data sending speed and receiving speed.

- The default display is LAN1 load.
- Only one LAN load can be displayed at one time.

### 5.19.5 Viewing HDD Information

You can view the HDD quantity, HDD type, total space, free space, status, and S.M.A.R.T information.

Select Main Menu > INFO > HDD, the HDD interface is displayed. See Figure 5-243.

INFO						
VERSION LOG	SATA 1 -		678 O			
EVENT NETWORK	ESATA 9 -	10 11 12 13 				
> HDD	1*	Туре	Total Space	Free Space	Status	S.M.A.R.T
DEVICE STATUS	All					-
CHANNEL INFO BPS	1*	Read/Write	2.72 TB	175.00 GB	Normal	

Figure 5-243

Description				
Indicates the quantity of HDD that can be installed. The total quantity				
is different depending on the model you purchased.				
• o: HDD is in normal working status.				
• -: No HDD is installed.				
Indicates the number of the currently connected HDD. * means the				
current working HDD.				
Indicates HDD type.				
Indicates the total capacity of HDD.				
Indicates the usable capacity of HDD.				
Indicates the status of the HDD to show if it is working normally.				
View the S.M.A.R.T reports from HDD detecting.				

Table 5-73

# 5.19.6 Viewing Device Status

You can view the information such as CPU temperature and memory usage to know the device status.

Select **Main Menu > INFO > DEVICE STATUS**, the **DEVICE STATUS** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-244.

INFO					LIVE	<b>2</b> .	90 88
VERSION	E Ot-t-						
LOG	Fan State						
EVENT	w later						
NETWORK							
HDD							
> DEVICE STATUS	CPU CPI	J Temperature	Case Temperature	Memory			
CHANNEL INFO		High	Normal				
BPS		71 °C	41 °C				
	30%			93%			

Figure 5-244

# 5.19.7 Viewing Channel Information

You can view the camera information connected to each channel.

Select **Main Menu > INFO > CHANNEL INFO**, the **CHANNEL INFO** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-245.

	INFO		
	VERSION		
	LOG	Channel	Format
	LUG		
	EVENT		1080P 📍
	NETWORK		
	NETWORK		
	HDD		
	DEVICE STATUS		1080P 📍
	DEVICEOTATOO		
>	CHANNEL INFO		
	BPS		
		11	
		12	

Figure 5-245

# 5.19.8 Viewing Data Stream Information

You can view the real-time data stream rate and resolution of each channel. Select **Main Menu > INFO > BPS**, the **BPS** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-246.

INFO		LIVE 🔔 🗣 🗒
VERSION	Channel Kb/S Resolution Wave	Channel Kb/S Resolution Wave
EVENT NETWORK HDD DEVICE STATUS	1       41       2560*1440          2       4085       1920*1080          3       47       1280*720          4       42       2560*1440          5       42       2560*1440	$ \begin{array}{c ccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$
CHANNEL INFO	6 4098 1920*1080 7 42 2560*1440	
> BPS	8       41       2560*1440          9       42       2560*1440          10       42       2560*1440          11       41       2560*1440          12       43       2560*1440          13       0	

Figure 5-246

# 5.20 Logout the Device

On the top right of the Main Menu interface or on any interface after you have entered the Main

Menu, click 🕒 -

- Select **Logout**, you will log out the device.
- Select **Reboot**, the Device will be rebooted.
- Select Shutdown, the Device will be turned off.

# 6

#### 🛄 NOTE

- The interfaces in the Manual are used for introducing the operations and only for reference. The actual interface might be different dependent on the model you purchased. If there is inconsistency between the Manual and the actual product, the actual product shall govern.
- The Manual is a general document for introducing the product, so there might be some functions described for the Device in the Manual not apply to the model you purchased.
- Besides Web, you can use our Smart PSS to login the device. For detailed information, please refer to Smart PSS user's manual.

# 6.1 Connecting to Network

#### 

- The factory default IP of the Device is 192.168.1.108.
- The Device supports monitoring on different browsers such as Safari, fire fox, Google on Apple PC to perform the functions such as multi-channel monitoring, PTZ control, and device parameters configurations.
- <u>Step 1</u> Check to make sure the Device has connected to the network.
- <u>Step 2</u> Configure the IP address, subnet mask and gateway for the PC and the Device. For details about network configuration of the Device, see "5.1.4.4 Configuring Network Settings."
- <u>Step 3</u> On your PC, check the network connection of the Device by using "ping \*\*\*.\*\*\*.\*\*\*". Usually the return value of TTL is 255.

# 6.2 Logging in the Web

<u>Step 1</u> Open the IE browser, enter the IP address of the Device, and then press Enter. The Login in dialog box is displayed. See Figure 6-1.

XV	R	Login ir	1
💄 User Name			
Password		-	
тср			
		Forgot Passv	vord?
	Login		

Figure 6-1

<u>Step 2</u> Enter the user name and password.

- The default administrator account is **admin**. The password is the one that was configured during initial settings. To security your account, it is recommended to keep the password properly and change it regularly.
- Click local to display the password.
- If you forgot the password, click **Forgot Password?** to reset the password. For details about resetting the password, see "6.3 Resetting Password."

Step 3 Click Login.

# 6.3 Resetting Password

You can reset the password through the reserved email address when you forget the password of admin account.

<u>Step 1</u> Login the Web of the Device.

The Login in dialog box is displayed. See Figure 6-2.

XVA	Login in
💄 User Name	
Password	
ТСР	
	Forgot Password?
Login	

Figure 6-2

#### Step 2 Click Forgot Password?

The Reset the password interface is displayed. See Figure 6-3.



Figure 6-3

Step 3 Follow the onscreen instructions to scan the QR code and get the security code.



- You can get the security code twice by scanning the same QR code. If you need to get the security code once again, please refresh the interface.
- Please use the security code received in your email box to reset the password within 24 hours; otherwise the security code becomes invalid.
- Wrong security code entrance up to five times will cause the security code locked for five minutes. After five minutes, you can continue to use this security code.

<u>Step 4</u> In the **Security code** box, enter the security code received in your reserved email box.

Step 5 Click Next.

Reset the password						
		<b>→</b>	2.Reset the passwor			
	User Name	admin				
	Password	•••••				
	Confirm Password	•••••				
				Cancel	Save	

The new password resetting interface is displayed. See Figure 6-4

Figure 6-4

<u>Step 6</u> In the **Password** box, enter the new password and enter it again in the **Confirm Password** box.

The new password can be set from 8 characters through 32 characters and contain at least two types from number, letter and special characters (excluding"", """, ";", ":" and "&").

<u>Step 7</u> Click **Save**. The password resetting is started.

After resetting is completed, a pop-up message is displayed to indicate the result and you will see the login interface is displayed. Then you can use the new password to login the Web.

# 6.4 Introducing Web Main Menu

After you have logged in the Web, the main menu is displayed. See Figure 6-5. For detailed operations, you can refer to "5 Local Configurations."



Figure 6-5

No.	lcon	Description	
1		Includes configuration menu through which you can configure camera settings, network settings, storage settings, system settings, account settings, and view information.	
2	None	Displays system date and time.	
3	•	When you point to Alle and time.	
4	•	Click , select <b>Logout</b> , <b>Reboot</b> , or <b>Shutdown</b> according to your actual situation.	
5		<ul> <li>Displays Cell Phone Client and Device SN QR Code.</li> <li>Cell Phone Client: Use your mobile phone to scan the QR code to add the device into the Cell Phone Client, and then you can start accessing the Device from your cell phone.</li> <li>Device SN: Obtain the Device SN by scanning the QR code. Go to the P2P management platform and add the Device SN into the platform. Then you can access and manage the device in the WAN. For details, please refer to the P2P operation manual. You can also configure P2P function in the local configurations. See "5.1.4.5 Configuring P2P Settings."</li> </ul>	
6		Displays the web main menu.	

		Includes eight function tiles: LIVE, VIDEO, ALARM, IVS, IoT, BACKUP,
		<b>DISPLAY</b> , and <b>AUDIO</b> . Click each tile to open the configuration interface of
		the tile.
		• LIVE: You can perform the operations such as viewing real-time video,
		configuring channel layout, setting PTZ controls, and using smart talk
		and instant record functions if needed.
		• VIDEO: Search for and play back the recorded video saved on the
		Device.
		• ALARM: Search for alarm information and configure alarm event
		actions.
-	News	• <b>IVS</b> : Configure the behavior detections by drawing rules for detecting
7	None	tripwire, intrusion, abandoned objects, and missing objects.
		• <b>IoT</b> : You can view, search and export the temperature and humidity
		data of camera and configure the alarm event settings.
		• <b>BACKUP</b> : Search and back up the video files to the local PC or
		external storage device such as USB storage device.
		• <b>DISPLAY</b> : Configure the display effect such as displaying content,
		image transparency, and resolution, and enable the zero-channel
		function.
		• <b>AUDIO</b> : Manage audio files and configure the playing schedule. The
		audio file can be played in response to an alarm event if the voice
		prompts function is enabled.

Table 6-1

#### 1. DVR cannot boot up properly.

- There are following possibilities:
- Input power is not correct.
- Power connection is not correct.
- Power switch button is damaged.
- Program upgrade is wrong.
- HDD malfunction or something wrong with HDD jumper configuration.
- Seagate DB35.1, DB35.2, SV35 or Maxtor 17-g has compatibility problem. Please upgrade to the latest version to solve this problem.
- Front panel error.
- Main board is damaged.

#### 2. DVR frequently shuts down or stops running.

There are following possibilities:

- Input voltage is not stable or it is too low.
- HDD malfunction or something wrong with jumper configuration.
- Button power is not enough.
- Front video signal is not stable.
- Working environment is too harsh, too much dust.
- Hardware malfunction.

#### 3. Hard disk cannot be detected.

There are following possibilities:

- HDD is broken.
- HDD jumper is damaged.
- HDD cable connection is loose.
- Main board SATA port is broken.

#### 4. There is no video output whether it is one-channel, multiple-channel or all-channel output.

There are following possibilities:

- Program is not compatible. Please upgrade to the latest version.
- Brightness is 0. Please restore factory default setup.
- There is no video input signal or it is too weak.
- Check privacy mask setup or your screen saver.
- DVR hardware malfunctions.

#### 5. Real-time video color is distorted.

There are following possibilities:

- When using BNC output, NTSC and PAL setup is not correct. The real-time video becomes black and white.
- DVR and monitor resistance is not compatible.
- Video transmission is too long or degrading is too huge.
- DVR color or brightness setup is not correct.

#### 6. Cannot search local records.

FAQ

There are following possibilities:

- HDD jumper is damaged.
- HDD is broken.
- Upgraded program is not compatible.
- The recorded file has been overwritten.
- Record function has been disabled.

#### 7. Video is distorted when searching local records.

There are following possibilities:

- Video quality setup is too low.
- Program read error, bit data is too small. There is mosaic in the full screen. Please restart the DVR to solve this problem.
- HDD data jumper error.
- HDD malfunction.
- DVR hardware malfunctions.

#### 8. No audio under monitor state.

There are following possibilities:

- It is not a power picker.
- It is not a power acoustics.
- Audio cable is damaged.
- DVR hardware malfunctions.

#### 9. There is audio under monitor state but no audio under playback state.

There are following possibilities:

- Setup is not correct. Please enable audio function.
- Corresponding channel has no video input. Playback is not continuous when the screen is blue.

#### 10. System time is not correct.

There are following possibilities:

- Setup is not correct.
- Battery contact is not correct or voltage is too low.
- Crystal oscillator is broken.

#### 11. Cannot control PTZ on DVR.

There are following possibilities:

- Front panel PTZ error.
- PTZ decoder setup, connection or installation is not correct.
- Cable connection is not correct.
- PTZ setup is not correct.
- PTZ decoder and DVR protocol is not compatible.
- PTZ decoder and DVR address is not compatible.
- When there are several decoders, please add 120 Ohm between the PTZ decoder A/B cables furthest end to delete the reverberation or impedance matching. Otherwise the PTZ control is not stable.
- The distance is too far.

#### 12. Motion detection function does not work.

There are following possibilities:

- Period setup is not correct.
- Motion detection zone setup is not correct.

- Sensitivity is too low.
- For some versions, there is hardware limit.

#### 13. Cannot log in client-end or web.

There are following possibilities:

- For Windows 98 or Windows ME user, please update your system to Windows 2000 sp4. Or you can install client-end software of lower version. Please note right now, our DVR is not compatible with Windows VISTA control.
- ActiveX control has been disabled.
- No dx8.1 or higher. Please upgrade display card driver.
- Network connection error.
- Network setup error.
- Password or user name is invalid.
- Client-end is not compatible with DVR program.

#### 14. There is only mosaic no video when preview or playback video file remotely.

There are following possibilities:

- Network fluency is not good.
- Client-end resources are limit.
- There is multiple-cast group setup in DVR. This mode can result in mosaic. Usually we do not recommend this mode.
- There is privacy mask or channel protection setup.
- Current user has no right to monitor.
- DVR local video output quality is not good.

#### 15. Network connection is not stable.

There are following possibilities:

- Network is not stable.
- IP address conflict.
- MAC address conflict.
- PC or DVR network card is not good.

#### 16. Burn error /USB back error.

There are following possibilities:

- Burner and DVR are in the same data cable.
- System uses too much CPU resources. Please stop record first and then begin backup.
- Data amount exceeds backup device capacity. It may result in burner error.
- Backup device is not compatible.
- Backup device is damaged.

#### 17. Keyboard cannot control DVR

There are following possibilities:

- DVR serial port setup is not correct.
- Address is not correct.
- When there are several switchers, power supply is not enough.
- Transmission distance is too far.

#### 18. Alarm signal cannot be disarmed.

There are following possibilities:

- Alarm setup is not correct.
- Alarm output has been open manually.
- Input device error or connection is not correct.

• Some program versions may have this problem. Please upgrade your system.

#### 19. Alarm function is null.

There are following possibilities:

- Alarm setup is not correct.
- Alarm cable connection is not correct.
- Alarm input signal is not correct.
- There are two loops connect to one alarm device.

#### 20. Remote control does not work.

There are following possibilities:

- Remote control address is not correct.
- Distance is too far or control angle is too small.
- Remote control battery power is low.
- Remote control is damaged or DVR front panel is damaged.

#### 21. Record storage period is not enough.

There are following possibilities:

- Camera quality is too low. Lens is dirty. Camera is installed against the light. Camera aperture setup is not correct.
- HDD capacity is not enough.
- HDD is damaged.

#### 22. Cannot playback the downloaded file.

There are following possibilities:

- There is no media player.
- No DXB8.1 or higher graphic acceleration software.
- There is no DivX503Bundle.exe control when you play the file transformed to AVI via media player.
  - No DivX503Bundle.exe or ffdshow-2004 1012 .exe in Windows XP OS.

#### 23. Forgot local menu operation password or network password

Please contact your local service engineer or our sales person for help. We can guide you to solve this problem.

#### 24. When I login via HTTPS, a dialogue says the certificate for this website is for other address.

Please create server certificate again.

#### 25. When I login via HTTPS, a dialogue says the certificate is not trusted.

Please download root certificate again.

#### 26. When I login via HTTPS, a dialogue says the certificate has expired or is not valid yet.

Please make sure your PC time is the same as the device time.

#### 27. I connect the general analog camera to the device, there is no video output.

There are following possibilities:

- Check camera power supplying, data cable connection and other items.
- This series device does not support the analog camera of all brands. Please make sure the device supports general standard definition analog camera.

# 28. I connect the standard definition analog camera or the coaxial camera to the device, there is no video output.

There are following possibilities:

• Check camera power supplying, or camera data cable connection.

 For the product supports analog standard definition camera/HD camera, you need to go to the Main Menu > CAMERA > CHANNEL TYPE to select corresponding channel type and then restart the DVR.

#### 29. I cannot connect to the IP channel.

There are following possibilities:

- Check the camera is online or not.
- Check IP channel setup is right or not (such as IP address, user name, password, connection protocol, and port number).
- The camera has set the whitelist (Only the specified devices can connect to the camera).

#### 30. After I connected to the IP channel, the one-window output is OK, but there is no

#### multiple-window output.

There are following possibilities:

- Check the sub stream of the camera has been enabled or not.
- Check the sub stream type of the camera is H.264 or not.
- Check the device supports camera sub stream resolution or not (such as 960H, D1, and HD1).

# 31. After I connected to the IP channel, the multiple-window output is OK, but there is no one-window output.

There are following possibilities:

- Check there is video from the IP channel or not. Please go to the Main Menu > INFO > BPS to view bit stream real-time information.
- Check the main stream of the camera has been enabled or not.
- Check the main stream type of the camera is H.264 or not.
- Check the device supports camera main stream resolution or not (such as 960H, D1, and HD1).
- Check camera network transmission has reached the threshold or not. Please check the online user of the camera.

# 32. After I connected to the IP channel, there is no video output in the one-window or the multiple-window mode. But I can see there is bit stream.

There are following possibilities:

- Check the main stream/sub stream type of the camera is H.264 or not.
- Check the device supports camera main stream/sub stream resolution or not (such as 1080P, 720P, 960H, D1, and HD1).
- Check the camera setup. Please make sure It supports the products of other manufacturers.

#### 33. DDNS registration failed or cannot access the device domain name.

There are following possibilities:

- Check the device is connected to the WAN. Please check the device has got the IP address if the PPPoE can dial. If there is a router, please check the router to make sure the device IP is online.
- Check the corresponding protocol of the DDNS is enabled. Check the DDNS function is OK or not.
- Check DNS setup is right or not. Default Google DNS server is 8.8.8.8, 8.8.5.5. You can use different DNS provided by your ISP.

#### 34. I cannot use the P2P function on my cell phone or the WEB.

There are following possibilities:

- Check the device P2P function is enabled or not. (Main menu->Setting->Network->P2P)
- Check the device is in the WAN or not.
- Check cell phone P2P login mode is right or not.
- It is the specified device P2P login port or not when you are using P2P client.
- Check user name or password is right or not.
- Check P2P SN is right or not. You can use the cell phone to scan the QR code on the device P2P interface (Main Menu > Network > P2P), or you can use the version information of the WEB to confirm. (For some previous series products, the device SN is the main board SN, it may result in error.)

#### 35. I connect the standard definition camera to the device, there is no video output.

There are following possibilities:

- Check the DVR supports standard definition signal or not. Only some series product supports analog standard definition signal, coaxial signal input.
- Check channel type is right or not. For the product supports analog standard definition camera/HD camera, you need to go to the **Main Menu > CAMERA > CHANNEL TYPE** to select corresponding channel type (such as analog) and then restart the DVR. In this way, the DVR can recognize the analog standard definition.
- Check camera power supplying, or camera data cable connection.

#### 36. I cannot connect to the IP camera.

There are following possibilities:

- Check DVR supports IP channel or not. Only some series products support A/D switch function, it can switch analog channel to the IP channel to connect to the IP camera. From Main Menu > CAMERA > CHANNEL TYPE, select the last channel to switch to the IP channel. Some series product products support IP channel extension, it supports N+N mode.
- Check the IPC and the DVR is connected or not. Please go to the Main Menu > CAMERA > REGISTRATION to search to view the IP camera is online or not. Or you can go to the Main Menu > INFO > NETWORK > Network Test, you can input IP camera IP address and then click the Test button to check you can connect to the IP camera or not.
- Check IP channel setup is right or not (such as IP address, manufacturer, port, user name, password, and remote channel number).

#### **Daily Maintenance**

- Please use the brush to clean the board, socket connector and the chassis regularly.
- The device shall be soundly earthed in case there is audio/video disturbance. Keep the device away from the static voltage or induced voltage.
- Please unplug the power cable before you remove the audio/video signal cable, RS232 or RS485 cable.
- Do not connect the TV to the local video output port (VOUT). It may result in video output circuit.
- Always shut down the device properly. Please use the shutdown function in the menu, or you can press the power button in the front panel for at least three seconds to shut down the device. Otherwise it may result in HDD malfunction.
- Please make sure the device is away from the direct sunlight or other heating sources. Please keep the sound ventilation.
- Please check and maintain the device regularly.

Abbreviations Full term BNC **Bayonet Nut Connector** CBR Constant Bit Rate CIF **Common Intermediate Format** DDNS **Dynamic Domain Name Service** DHCP **Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol** DNS Domain Name System DST **Daylight Saving Time** DVR **Digital Video Recorder** FTP File Transfer Protocol HDD Hard Disk Drive HDMI High Definition Multimedia Interface HTTP Hyper Text Transfer Protocol loT Internet of Things IP Internet Protocol IVS Intelligent Video System LAN Local Area Network MAC Media Access Control MTU Maximum Transmission Unit NTP Network Time Protocol NTSC National Television Standards Committee ONVIF **Open Network Video Interface Forum** PAL Phase Alteration Line PAT Port Address Translation POS Point of Sale **PPPoE** Point-to-Point Protocol over Ethernet PSS Professional Surveillance Software PTZ Pan Tilt Zoom RCA Radio Corporation of American RTSP **Real Time Streaming Protocol** S.M.A.R.T Self-Monitoring-Analysis and Reporting Technology SATA Serial Advanced Technology Attachment SMTP Simple Mail Transfer Protocol **SNMP** Simple Network Management Protocol TCP **Transmission Control Protocol** TFTP Trivial File Transfer Protocol UDP User Datagram Protocol **UPnP** Universal Plug and Play VBR Variable Bit Rate

Abbreviations	Full term	
VGA	Video Graphics Array	
WAN	Wide Area Network	

# **Appendix 2 HDD Capacity Calculation**

Calculate total capacity needed by each DVR according to video recording (video recording type and video file storage time).

<u>Step 1</u> According to Formula (1) to calculate storage capacity  $q_i$  that is the capacity of each channel needed for each hour, unit MB.

Formula (1): 
$$q_i = d_i \div 8 \times 3600 \div 1024$$

In the formula:  $d_i$  means the bit rate, unit Kbit/s

<u>Step 2</u> After video time requirement is confirmed, according to Formula (2) to calculate the storage capacity  $m_i$ , which is storage of each channel needed unit MB.

Formula (2): 
$$m_i = q_i \times h_i \times D_i$$

In the formula:

- *h<sub>i</sub>* means the recording time for each day (hour)
- $D_i$  means number of days for which the video shall be kept
- <u>Step 3</u> According to Formula (3) to calculate total capacity (accumulation)  $q_T$  that is needed for all channels in the DVR during **scheduled video recording**.

Formula (3): 
$$q_T = \sum_{i=1}^{c} m_i$$

In the formula: c means total number of channels in one DVR

<u>Step 4</u> According to Formula (4) to calculate total capacity (accumulation)  $q_T$  that is needed for all channels in DVR during **alarm video recording (including motion detection)**.

Formula (4): 
$$q_T = \sum_{i=1}^c m_i imes a\%$$

In the formula: a% means alarm occurrence rate

You can refer to the following table for the file size in one hour per channel. (All the data listed below are for reference only.)

Bit stream size (max)	File size	Bit stream size (max)	File size
96Kbps	42MB	128Kbps	56MB
160Kbps	70MB	192Kbps	84MB
224Kbps	98MB	256Kbps	112MB
320Kbps	140MB	384Kbps	168MB
448Kbps	196MB	512Kbps	225MB

Bit stream size (max)	File size	Bit stream size (max)	File size
640Kbps	281MB	768Kbps	337MB
896Kbps	393MB	1024Kbps	450MB
1280Kbps	562MB	1536Kbps	675MB
1792Kbps	787MB	2048Kbps	900MB

# Appendix 3.1 Compatible USB list

Manufacturer	Model	Capacity
Sandisk	Cruzer Micro	512MB
Sandisk	Cruzer Micro	1GB
Sandisk	Cruzer Micro	2GB
Sandisk	Cruzer Freedom	256MB
Sandisk	Cruzer Freedom	512MB
Sandisk	Cruzer Freedom	1GB
Sandisk	Cruzer Freedom	2GB
Kingston	DataTraveler II	1GB
Kingston	DataTraveler II	2GB
Kingston	DataTraveler	1GB
Kingston	DataTraveler	2GB
Maxell	USB Flash Stick	128MB
Maxell	USB Flash Stick	256MB
Maxell	USB Flash Stick	512MB
Maxell	USB Flash Stick	1GB
Maxell	USB Flash Stick	2GB
Kingax	Super Stick	128MB
Kingax Super Stick		256MB
Kingax Super Stick		512MB
Kingax	Super Stick	1GB
Kingax		
Netac	U210	128MB
Netac	U210	
Netac	Netac U210	
Netac	U210	1GB
Netac	U210	2GB
Netac	U208	4GB
Teclast	Ti Cool	128MB
Teclast	Ti Cool	256MB
Teclast Ti Cool		512MB
Teclast Ti Cool		1GB
Sandisk Cruzer Micro		2GB
Sandisk	Cruzer Micro	8GB
Sandisk	Ti Cool	2GB
Sandisk Hongjiao		4GB
Lexar	Lexar	256MB

Manufacturer Model		Capacity
Kingston	Data Traveler	1GB
Kingston	Data Traveler	16GB
Kingston	Data Traveler	32GB
Aigo L8315		16GB
Sandisk	250	16GB
Kingston	Data Traveler Locker+	32GB
Netac U228		8GB

# Appendix 3.2 Compatible SD Card list

Manufacturer	Standard	Capacity	Card type
Transcend	SDHC6	16GB	Big
Kingston	SDHC4	4GB	Big
Kingston	SD	2GB	Big
Kingston	SD	1GB	Big
Sandisk	SDHC2	8GB	Small
Sandisk	SD	1GB	Small

# Appendix 3.3 Compatible Portable HDD list

Manufacturer	Model	Capacity
YDStar	YDstar HDD box	40GB
Netac	Netac	80GB
lomega	lomega RPHD-CG" RNAJ50U287	250GB
WD Elements	WCAVY1205901	1.5TB
Newsmy	Liangjian	320GB
WD Elements	WDBAAR5000ABK-00	500GB
WD Elements WDBAAU0015HBK-00		1.5TB
Seagate	Seagate FreeAgent Go(ST905003F)	
Aigo	H8169	

# Appendix 3.4 Compatible USB DVD List

Manufacturer	Model
Samsung	SE-S084
BenQ	LD2000-2K4

# Appendix 3.5 Compatible SATA DVD List

Manufacturer	Model
LG	GH22NS30

Manufacturer	Model
Samsung	TS-H653 Ver.A
Samsung	TS-H653 Ver.F
Samsung	SH-224BB/CHXH
SONY	DRU-V200S
SONY	DRU-845S
SONY	AW-G170S
Pioneer	DVR-217CH

# Appendix 3.6 Compatible SATA HDD List

### 

Please upgrade the DVR firmware to latest version to ensure the accuracy of the table below. Here we recommend HDD of 500GB to 4TB capacity.

Manufacturer	Series	Model	Capacity	Port Mode
Seagate	Video 3.5	ST1000VM002	1TB	SATA
Seagate	Video 3.5	ST2000VM003	2TB	SATA
Seagate	Video 3.5	ST3000VM002	3TB	SATA
Seagate	Video 3.5	ST4000VM000	4TB	SATA
Seagate	SV35	ST1000VX000	1TB	SATA
Seagate	SV35	ST2000VX000	2TB	SATA
Seagate	SV35	ST3000VX000	3TB	SATA
Seagate	SV35 (Support HDD	ST1000VX002	1TB	SATA
	data recovery offered by			
	Seagate)			
Seagate	SV35 (Support HDD	ST2000VX004	2TB	SATA
	data recovery offered by			
	Seagate)			
Seagate	SV35 (Support HDD	ST3000VX004	3TB	SATA
	data recovery offered by			
	Seagate)			
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST1000VX001	1TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST1000VX005	1TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST2000VX003	2TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST2000VX008	2TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST3000VX006	3TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST3000VX010	3TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST4000VX000	4TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST4000VX007	4TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST5000VX0001	5TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST6000VX0001	6TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST6000VX0023	6TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST6000VX0003	6TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST8000VX0002	8TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST8000VX0022	8TB	SATA

Manufacturer	Series	Model	Capacity	Port Mode
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST100000VX0004	10TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST1000VX003	1TB	SATA
	(Support HDD data			
	recovery offered by			
	Seagate)			
Seagate	(Support HDD data	ST2000VX005	2TB	SATA
	recovery offered by			
	Seagate)			
Seagate	(Support HDD data	ST3000VX005	3TB	SATA
	recovery offered by			
	Seagate)			
Seagate	(Support HDD data	ST4000VX002	4TB	SATA
	recovery offered by			
	Seagate)			
Seagate	(Support HDD data	ST5000VX0011	5TB	SATA
	recovery offered by			
	Seagate)			
Seagate	(Support HDD data	ST6000VX0011	6TB	SATA
	recovery offered by			
	Seagate)			
Seagate	(Support HDD data	ST8000VX0012	8TB	SATA
	recovery offered by			
	Seagate)			
WD	WD Green	WD10EURX (EOL)	1TB	SATA
WD	WD Green	WD20EURX (EOL)	2TB	SATA
WD	WD Green	WD30EURX (EOL)	3TB	SATA
WD	WD Green	WD40EURX (EOL)	4TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD10PURX	1TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD20PURX	2TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD30PURX	3TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD40PURX	4TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD50PURX	5TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD60PURX	6TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD80PUZX	8TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD10PURZ	1TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD20PURZ	2TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD30PURZ	3TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD40PURZ	4TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD50PURZ	5TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD60PURZ	6TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD80PURZ	8TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD4NPURX	4TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD6NPURX	6TB	SATA
TOSHIBA	Mars	DT01ABA100V	1TB	SATA
TOSHIBA	Mars	DT01ABA200V	2TB	SATA

Manufacturer	Series	Model	Capacity	Port Mode
TOSHIBA	Mars	DT01ABA300V	3TB	SATA
TOSHIBA	Sonance	MD03ACA200V	2TB	SATA
TOSHIBA	Sonance	MD03ACA300V	3TB	SATA
TOSHIBA	Sonance	MD03ACA400V	4TB	SATA
TOSHIBA	Sonance	MD04ABA400V	4TB	SATA
TOSHIBA	Sonance	MD04ABA500V	5TB	SATA
Seagate	Constellation ES series	ST1000NM0033	1TB	SATA
-	(SATA interface)			
Seagate	Constellation ES series	ST2000NM0033	2TB	SATA
	(SATA interface)			
Seagate	Constellation ES series	ST3000NM0033	3TB	SATA
	(SATA interface)			
Seagate	Constellation ES series	ST4000NM0033	4TB	SATA
	(SATA interface)			
Seagate	Constellation ES series	ST1000NM0055	1TB	SATA
	(SATA interface)			
Seagate	Constellation ES series	ST2000NM0055	2TB	SATA
	(SATA interface)			
Seagate	Constellation ES series	ST3000NM0005	3TB	SATA
	(SATA interface)			
Seagate	Constellation ES series	ST4000NM0035	4TB	SATA
	(SATA interface)			
Seagate	Constellation ES series	ST6000NM0115	6TB	SATA
	(SATA interface)			
Seagate	Constellation ES series	ST8000NM0055	8TB	SATA
	(SATA interface)			
Seagate	Constellation ES series	ST10000NM0016	10TB	SATA
	(SATA interface)			
Seagate	Constellation ES series	ST4000NM0024	4TB	SATA
	(SATA interface)			
Seagate	Constellation ES series	ST6000NM0024	6TB	SATA
	(SATA interface)			
Seagate	Constellation ES series	ST1000NM0023	1TB	SATA
	(SAS interface)			
Seagate	Constellation ES series	ST2000NM0023	2TB	SATA
	(SAS interface)			
Seagate	Constellation ES series	ST3000NM0023	3TB	SATA
	(SAS interface)		475	0.471
Seagate	Constellation ES series	ST4000NM0023	4TB	SATA
<b>0</b>	(SAS interface)		075	0.474
Seagate	Constellation ES series	ST6000NM0014	6TB	SATA
0	(SAS interface)	07400001040045	4.75	0.474
Seagate	Constellation ES series	ST1000NM0045	1TB	SATA
	(SAS interface)			

Manufacturer	Series	Model	Capacity	Port Mode
Seagate	Constellation ES series (SAS interface)	ST2000NM0045	2TB	SATA
Seagate	Constellation ES series (SAS interface)	ST3000NM0025	3TB	SATA
Seagate	Constellation ES series (SAS interface)	ST4000NM0025	4TB	SATA
Seagate	Constellation ES series (SAS interface)	ST6000NM0095	6TB	SATA
Seagate	Constellation ES series (SAS interface)	ST6000NM0034	6TB	SATA
Seagate	Constellation ES series (SAS interface)	ST8000NM0075	8TB	SATA
WD	WD RE series (SATA interface)	WD1003FBYZ	1TB	SATA
WD	WD RE series (SATA interface)	WD1004FBYZ (replace WD1003FBYZ)	1TB	SATA
WD	WD RE series (SATA interface)	WD2000FYYZ	2TB	SATA
WD	WD RE series (SATA interface)	WD2004FBYZ (replace WD2000FYYZ)	2TB	SATA
WD	WD RE series (SATA interface)	WD3000FYYZ	3TB	SATA
WD	WD RE series (SATA interface)	WD4000FYYZ	4TB	SATA
WD	WD (SATA interface)	WD2000F9YZ	2TB	SATA
WD	WD (SATA interface)	WD3000F9YZ	3TB	SATA
WD	WD (SATA interface)	WD4000F9YZ	4TB	SATA
WD	WD (SATA interface)	WD4002FYYZ	4TB	SATA
WD	WD (SATA interface)	WD6001FSYZ	6TB	SATA
WD	WD (SATA interface)	WD6002FRYZ	6TB	SATA
WD	WD (SATA interface)	WD8002FRYZ	8TB	SATA
HITACHI	Ultrastar series (SATA interface)	HUS724030ALA640	3TB	SATA
HITACHI	Ultrastar series (SATA interface)	HUS726060ALE610	6TB	SATA
HITACHI	Ultrastar series (SATA interface)	HUH728060ALE600	6TB	SATA
HITACHI	Ultrastar series (SATA interface)	HUH728080ALE600	8TB	SATA
HITACHI	Ultrastar series (SAS interface)	HUS726020AL5210	2TB	SATA
HITACHI	Ultrastar series (SAS interface)	HUS726040AL5210	4TB	SATA
Manufacturer	Series	Model	Capacity	Port Mode
--------------	-----------------------	-------------------	----------	-----------
HITACHI	Ultrastar series (SAS	HUS726060AL5210	6TB	SATA
	interface)			
Seagate	Pipeline HD Mini	ST320VT000	320GB	SATA
Seagate	Pipeline HD Mini	ST500VT000	500GB	SATA
Seagate	Pipeline HD Mini	ST2000LM003 (EOL)	2TB	SATA
TOSHIBA	2.5-inch PC series	MQ01ABD050V	500GB	SATA
TOSHIBA	2.5-inch PC series	MQ01ABD100V	1TB	SATA
SAMSUNG	HN-M101MBB	HN-M101MBB (EOL)	1TB	SATA
Seagate	2.5-inch enterprise	ST1000NX0313	1TB	SATA
	series			
Seagate	2.5-inch enterprise	ST2000NX0253	2TB	SATA
	series			

# Appendix 4 Compatible CD/DVD Burner List

## 

Please upgrade the DVR firmware to latest version to ensure the accuracy of the table below. And you can use the USB cable with the model recommended to set USB burner.

Manufacturer	Model	Port Type	Туре
Sony	DRX-S50U	USB	DVD-RW
Sony	DRX-S70U	USB	DVD-RW
Sony	AW-G170S	SATA	DVD-RW
Samsung	TS-H653A	SATA	DVD-RW
Panasonic	SW-9588-C	SATA	DVD-RW
Sony	DRX-S50U	USB	DVD-RW
BenQ	5232WI	USB	DVD-RW

# Appendix 5 Compatible Displayer List

Please refer to the following table form compatible displayer list.

Brand	Model	Dimension (Unit: inch)
BENQ (LCD)	ET-0007-TA	19-inch (wide screen)
DELL (LCD)	E178FPc	17-inch
BENQ (LCD)	Q7T4	17-inch
BENQ (LCD)	Q7T3	17-inch
HFNOVO (LCD)	LXB-L17C	17-inch
SANGSUNG (LCD)	225BW	22-inch (wide screen)
HFNOVO (CRT)	LXB-FD17069HB	17-inch
HFNOVO (CRT)	LXB-HF769A	17-inch
HFNOVO(CRT)	LX-GJ556D	17-inch
Samsung (LCD)	2494HS	24-inch
Samsung (LCD)	P2350	23-inch
Samsung (LCD)	P2250	22-inch
Samsung (LCD)	P2370G	23-inch
Samsung (LCD)	2043	20-inch
Samsung (LCD)	2243EW	22-inch
Samsung (LCD)	SMT-1922P	19-inch
Samsung (LCD)	T190	19-inch
Samsung (LCD)	T240	24-inch
LG (LCD)	W1942SP	19-inch
LG (LCD)	W2243S	22-inch
LG (LCD)	W2343T	23-inch
BENQ (LCD)	G900HD	18.5-inch
BENQ (LCD)	G2220HD	22-inch
PHILIPS (LCD)	230E	23-inch
PHILIPS (LCD)	220CW9	23-inch
PHILIPS (LCD)	220BW9	24-inch
PHILIPS (LCD)	220EW9	25-inch

# Appendix 6 Compatible Switcher

Brand	Model	network working mode	
D-LinK	DES-1016D	10/100M self-adaptive	
D-LinK	DES-1008D	10/100M self-adaptive	
	RG-S1926S	Five network modes:	
		AUTO	
Ruijie		HALF-10M	
Tulle		• FULL-10M	
		HALF-100M	
		FULL-100M	
H3C	H3C-S1024	10/100M self-adaptive	
TP-LINK	TL-SF1016	10/100M self-adaptive	
TP-LINK	TL-SF1008+	10/100M self-adaptive	

## Appendix 7.1 What Is the Surge

Surge is a short current or voltage change during a very short time. In the circuit, it lasts for microsecond. In a 220V circuit, the 5KV or 10KV voltage change during a very short time (about microseconds) can be called a surge. The surge comes from two ways: external surge and internal surge.

- The external surge: The external surge mainly comes from the thunder lightning. Or it comes from the voltage change during the on/off operation in the electric power cable.
- The internal surge: The research finds 88% of the surge from the low voltage comes from the internal of the building such as the air conditioning, elevator, electric welding, air compressor, water pump, power button, duplicating machine and other device of inductive load.

The lightning surge is far above the load level the PC or the micro devices can support. In most cases, the surge can result in electric device chip damage, PC error code, accelerating the part aging, data loss and etc. Even when a small 20 horsepower inductive engine boots up or stops, the surge can reach 3000V to 5000V, which can adversely affect the electronic devices that use the same distribution box.

To protect the device, you need to evaluate its environment, the lighting affection degree objectively. Because surge has close relationship with the voltage amplitude, frequency, network structure, device voltage-resistance, protection level, ground and etc. The thunder proof work shall be a systematic project, emphasizing the all-round protection (including building, transmission cable, device, ground and etc.). There shall be comprehensive management and the measures shall be scientific, reliable, practical and economic. Considering the high voltage during the inductive thundering, the International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) standard on the energy absorbing step by step theory and magnitude classification in the protection zone, you need to prepare multiple precaution levels.

You can use the lightning rod, lightning strap or the lightning net to reduce the damage to the building, personal injury or the property.

The lightning protection device can be divided into three types:

- Power lightning arrester: There are 220V single-phrase lightning arrester and 380V three-phrase lightening arrester (mainly in parallel connection, sometimes use series connection) You can parallel connect the power lightning arrester in the electric cable to reduce the short-time voltage change and release the surge current. From the BUS to the device, there are usually three levels so that system can reduce the voltage and release the current step by step to remove the thunderstorm energy and guarantee the device safety. You can select the replaceable module type, the terminal connection type and portable socket according to your requirement.
- Signal lightning arrester: This device is mainly used in the PC network, communication system. The connection type is serial connection. Once you connected the signal lightning

arrestor with the signal port, it can cut the channel of the thunderstorm to the device, and on the other hand, it can discharge the current to the ground to guarantee the device proper work. The signal lightning arrester has many specifications, and widely used in many devices such as telephone, network, analog communication, digital communication, cable TV and satellite antenna. For all the input port, especially those from the outdoor, you need to install the signal lightning arrester.

• Antenna feed cable lightning arrester: It is suitable for antenna system of the transmitter or the device system to receive the wireless signal. It uses the serial connection too.

Please note, when you select the lighting arrester, please pay attention to the port type and the earthing reliability. In some important environment, you need to use special shielded cable. Do not parallel connect the thunder proof ground cable with the ground cable of the lightning rod. Please make sure they are far enough and grounded respectively.

## Appendix 7.2 The Earthing Modes

We all know the earthing is the most complicated technology in the electromagnetism compatibility design since there is no systematic theory or module. The earthing has many modes, but the selection depends on the system structure and performance.

The following are some successfully experience from our past work.

• **One-point ground:** In the following figure you can see there is a one-point ground. This connection provides common point to allow signal to be transmitted in many circuits. If there is no common point, the error signal transmission occurred. In the one-point ground mode, each circuit is just grounded only and they are connected at the same point. Since there is only one common point, there is no circuit and so, there is no interference.



• **Multiple-point ground:** In the following figure, you can see the internal circuit uses the chassis as the common point. While at the same time, all devices chassis use the earthing as the common point. In this connection, the ground structure can provide the lower ground resistance because when there are multiple-point grounds; each ground cable is as short as possible. And the parallel cable connection can reduce the total conductance of the ground conductor. In the high-frequency circuit, you need to use the multiple-point ground mode and each cable needs to connect to the ground. The length shall be less than the 1/20 of the signal wavelength.



• **Mixed ground:** The mix ground consists of the feature of the one-point ground and multiple-point ground. For example, the power in the system needs to use the one-point ground mode while the radio frequency signal requires the multiple-point ground. So, you can use the following figure to earth. For the direct current (DC), the capacitance is open circuit and the circuit is one-point ground. For the radio frequency signal, the capacitance is conducive and the circuit adopts multiple-point ground.



When connecting devices of huge size (the device physical dimension and connection cable is big comparing with the wave path of existed interference), then there are possibility of interference when the current goes through the chassis and cable. In this situation, the interference circuit path usually lies in the system ground circuit.

When considering the earthing, you need to think about two aspects: One is the system compatibility, and the other is the external interference coupling into the earth circuit, which results in system error. For the external interference is not regular, it is not easy to resolve.

# Appendix 7.3 Thunder Proof Ground Method in the Monitor

## System

- The monitor system shall have sound thunder proof earthing to guarantee personnel safety and device safety.
- The monitor system working ground resistance shall be less than  $1\Omega$ .
- The thunder proof ground shall adopt the special ground cable from the monitor control room to the ground object. The ground cable adopts copper insulation cable or wire and its ground section shall be more than 20mm<sup>2</sup>.
- The ground cable of the monitor system can not short circuit or mixed connected with the strong alternative current cable.
- For all the ground cables from the control room to the monitor system or ground cable of

other monitor devices, please use the copper resistance soft cable and its section shall be more than 4mm<sup>2</sup>.

- The monitor system usually can adopt the one-point ground.
- Please connect the ground end of 3-pin socket in the monitor system to the ground port of the system (protection ground cable)

# Appendix 7.4 The Shortcut Way to Check the Electric System by Digital Multimeter

For 220V AC socket, from the top to the bottom, E (ground cable), N (neutral cable), L(live cable). Please refer to the following figure.



There is a shortcut way to check these thee cables connection are standard or not (not the accurate check).



In the following operations, the multimeter range shall be at 750V.

### For E (earth cable)

Turn the digital multimeter to 750V AC, use your one hand to hold the metal end, and then the other hand insert the pen to the E port of the socket. See the following figure. If the multimeter shows 0, then you can see current earth cable connection is standard. If the value is more than 10, then you can know there is inductive current and the earth cable connection is not proper.



### For L (live cable)

Turn the digital multimeter to 750V AC, use your one hand to hold the metal end, and then the other hand insert the pen to the L port of the socket. See the following figure. If the multimeter shows 125, then you can see current live cable connection is standard. If the value is less than 60, then you can know current live cable connection is not proper or it is not the live cable at all.



### For N (Neutral cable)

Turn the digital multimeter to 750V AC, use your one hand to hold the metal end, and then the other hand insert the pen to the N port of the socket. See the following figure. If the multimeter shows 0, then you can see current N cable connection is standard. If the value is more than 10, then you can see there is inductive current and the neutral cable connection is not proper. If the value is 120, then you can know that you have misconnected the neutral cable to the live cable.



# Appendix 8 RJ45-RS232 Connection Cable Definition

Here we are going to make standard RS232 port and standard RJ45 (T568B). Please refer to the following figure for RJ45 cable definition.





Please refer to the following figure for RS232 pin definition.



#### **Cross Connection**

Please refer to the following figure for connection information.



Please refer to the following table for detailed crossover cable connection information.

RJ45 (T568B)	RJ45 (Network cable)	RS232	Signal Description
4	Blue	2	RXD
5	White and blue	3	TXD
3	White and green	5	GND

### **Straight Connection**

Please refer to the following figure for straight cable connection information.



RS232

RJ45

Please refer to the following table for straight connection information.

RJ45 (T568B)	RJ45 (Network cable)	RS232	Signal Description
4	Blue	3	RXD
5	White and blue	2	TXD
3	White and green	5	GND